

## Update Information 2008 Update

This package updates the *Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings*, 5th edition, which was originally published in 1996 and has been updated semiannually since 1997. All new instruction sheets and replacement pages in the 2008 Update dated February 2008. The table that follows lists the pages included in this package and summarizes the nature of the updates. Users who wish to maintain a permanent record of the history of the additions and changes listed here should file this table behind the **Update Information** tab in Volume 4 of the manual.

With this update, the manual is current through the end of February 2008. This is the final update to the 5th edition of the manual. In autumn 2008, a new edition of the manual will be published under the title *Subject Headings Manual*. The new manual will complement the *Classification and Shelving Manual*, published earlier in 2008.

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
Contents	1	Titles of H 181 and H 182 changed	Replace
Contents	7-10	H 1913 added to table of contents	Replace
H 181	1-4	Instruction sheet rewritten	Replace
H 182	1-4	Instruction sheet rewritten	Replace
H 250	3	Examples updated in sec. 1.b.(1)	Replace
H 371	3-8	Text for 360 fields updated	Replace
H 405	4	Text revised in sec. 3.b	Replace
H 405	7-10	“Planned communities” added to list on p. 8	Replace
H 690	2	URLs updated in sec. 1	Replace
H 690	6	Text added to sec. 7	Replace
H 975	1	Text added to sec. 2.c.	Replace
H 1095	9-59	List updated	Replace
H 1100	7-11	List updated	Replace
H 1103	7-8	List updated	Replace
H 1105	5-7	List updated	Replace

## Update Information 2008 Update

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
H 1110	17-18	List updated	Replace
H 1110	23-24	List updated	Replace
H 1120	1-2	List updated	Replace
H 1147	1-11	Text added to Background statement; list updated	Replace
H 1149	3-4	List updated	Replace
H 1150	1-2	List updated	Replace
H 1151	3	List updated	Replace
H 1153	3-4	List updated	Replace
H 1154	3-6	List updated	Replace
H 1155.8	1-2	List updated	Replace
H 1156	3-4	List updated	Replace
H 1158	1-4	List updated	Replace
H 1164	3-4	List updated	Replace
H 1180	1-10	List updated	Replace
H 1200	1	Text added to Background statement	Replace
H 1334	8	Example updated in sec. 4.b.	Replace
H 1430	1-4	Instruction sheet revised	
H 1645	1	Text added to sec. 1	Replace
Contents of Volume Four	1-2	H 1913 added to table of contents	Replace
H 1913	1-4	Text revised in sec. 1.e.; example updated in sec. 2.c.(2)	Replace
H 1917.5	10	Text added to sec. 3.c.	Replace
H 1918	1	Text added to sec. 1.a.	Replace

**Update Information  
2008 Update**

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
H 1919.5	1-2	Formatting errors corrected	Replace
H 1925	1	Text added to Background statement	Replace
H 1935	3	Text added to sec. 2.h.	Replace
Index	3-4	Text updated	Replace
Index	13-18	Text updated	Replace
Index	31-50	Text updated	Replace
Index	63-96	Text updated	Replace



### *Notice*

This is the final update to the 5<sup>th</sup> (1996) edition of the *Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings*.

A new edition of the manual will be published in autumn 2008 under the title *Subject Headings Manual*. The new manual will complement the *Classification and Shelving Manual*, published earlier in 2008.



## VOLUME ONE

<i>H 40</i>	Library of Congress Subject Authority Records
<i>H 80</i>	Order of Subject Headings
<i>H 150</i>	Partial Title Added Entries
<i>H 160</i>	Uncontrolled Subject Terms in the 653 Field
<i>H 170</i>	Core Level Records
<i>H 175</i>	Editions
<i>H 180</i>	Assigning and Constructing Subject Headings
<i>H 181</i>	Arabic/Persian Subject Headings
<i>H 182</i>	Chinese/Japanese/Korean Subject Headings
<i>H 184</i>	Subject Headings Identical to Descriptive Access Points

### ***Making Subject Heading Proposals***

<i>H 187</i>	When to Establish a New Topical Heading
<i>H 193</i>	Changing a Heading or Deleting a Subject Authority Record
<i>H 193.5</i>	Deleted Heading Information
<i>H 194</i>	Providing for Geographic Subdivision of Existing Subject Headings
<i>H 195</i>	Changing References in Subject Authority Records
<i>H 196</i>	Changing Class Numbers in Subject Authority Records
<i>H 200</i>	Preparation of Subject Heading Proposals
<i>H 202</i>	Authority Research for Subject Heading Proposals
<i>H 203</i>	Citation of Sources
<i>H 205</i>	Establishing New Subdivisions Having General Application
<i>H 250</i>	Music Heading Authority Records

# Contents

## *VOLUME ONE (Continued)*

### ***Formulating Subject Headings***

- H 285* Singular vs. Plural Forms in Subject Headings
- H 290* Articles in the Initial Position
- H 306* Natural Language in Topical Subject Headings
- H 310* [ . . . ] and [ . . . ] Headings
- H 315* Foreign Terms
- H 320* Headings Qualified by Nationality, Ethnic Group, Language, Etc.
- H 350* Nationality Designation of Classes of Persons
- H 351* Ethnic Qualifiers
- H 357* Parenthetical Qualifiers in Subject Headings
- H 360* [ . . . ] as [ . . . ] Headings
- H 362* Free-Floating Terms and Phrases
  
- H 364* Authorization for Geographic Subdivision
  
- H 365* Library of Congress Classification Numbers in Subject Authority Records

### ***References***

- H 370* Broader Terms, Narrower Terms, and Related Terms
- H 371* General See Also References
- H 373* "Used for" References
- H 374* General See References
- H 375* [*Topic*]—[*Place*] Broader Term References

*H 400* Scope Notes

*H 405* Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

### ***Name Headings as Subjects***

- H 430*
- H 432* Subject Usage Information in Name Authority Records
- H 436* Provisional Name Headings
- H 460* Name Changes in Non-Jurisdictional Corporate Bodies
- H 475* Subdividing Corporate Name Headings by Place

*H 620* Chronological Headings and Subdivisions



## *VOLUME THREE (Continued)*

### *Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, Etc.*

<i>H 1574</i>	Dynasties, Royal Houses, Etc.
<i>H 1576</i>	Early Works
<i>H 1578</i>	Economic Conditions
<i>H 1579</i>	Education
<i>H 1580</i>	Effect of One Topic on Another
<i>H 1580.5</i>	Electronic Serials
<i>H 1581</i>	Emigration and Immigration
<i>H 1591</i>	Evaluation
<i>H 1592</i>	Events
<i>H 1593</i>	Exhibitions
<i>H 1595</i>	Facsimiles
<i>H 1600</i>	Festschriften
<i>H 1610</i>	Fictitious Characters
<i>H 1624</i>	Finance
<i>H 1627</i>	Folklore
<i>H 1628</i>	Forecasting
<i>H 1629</i>	Foreign Relations
<i>H 1630</i>	Gazetteers
<i>H 1631</i>	Genealogy and Family Names
<i>H 1636</i>	Gods of Greek and Roman Mythology
<i>H 1642</i>	Government Policy
<i>H 1643</i>	Government Publications
<i>H 1645</i>	Guidebooks
<i>H 1646</i>	Handbooks, Manuals, Etc.
<i>H 1647</i>	History
<i>H 1659</i>	Illustrations
<i>H 1660</i>	Imprints
<i>H 1670</i>	Indexes
<i>H 1673</i>	Industries Based on Products
<i>H 1675</i>	Influence of One Topic on Another
<i>H 1675.5</i>	Information Services
<i>H 1676</i>	Inquisition
<i>H 1676.5</i>	Inspection
<i>H 1678</i>	Interviews

## Contents

### *VOLUME THREE (Continued)*

#### *Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, Etc.*

<i>H 1680</i>	Islam
<i>H 1690</i>	Juvenile Materials
<i>H 1705</i>	Legal Materials: Law and Legislation and Other Subdivisions
<i>H 1710</i>	Legal Materials: Legal Research
<i>H 1715</i>	Legal Materials: Legislation
<i>H 1718</i>	Legal Materials: Systems of Law
<i>H 1720</i>	Legends and Stories about Animals
<i>H 1775</i>	Literature: General
<i>H 1780</i>	Literature: Drama
<i>H 1790</i>	Literature: Fiction
<i>H 1795</i>	Literature: Legends and Romances
<i>H 1800</i>	Literature: Poetry
<i>H 1828</i>	Literature from One Place in Multiple Languages
<i>H 1845</i>	Local History and Genealogical Source Materials
<i>H 1848</i>	Longitudinal Studies
<i>H 1855</i>	Manuscripts
<i>H 1865</i>	Maps and Atlases
<i>H 1870</i>	Marketing
<i>H 1890</i>	Mental Health and Mental Health Services
<i>H 1893</i>	Microforms
<i>H 1895</i>	Miniature Books

### *VOLUME FOUR*

#### *Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, Etc.*

<i>H 1910</i>	Miscellanea
<i>H 1913</i>	Moving Image Genre/Form Headings
<i>H 1916</i>	Museums
<i>H 1916.3</i>	Music: General
<i>H 1916.5</i>	Music: Jazz and Popular Music
<i>H 1917</i>	Music of Ethnic, National, and Religious Groups
<i>H 1917.5</i>	Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium of Performance
<i>H 1918</i>	Musical Instruments
<i>H 1919</i>	Name and Names

## VOLUME FOUR (Continued)

### *Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, Etc.*

<i>H 1919.5</i>	Nationalities
<i>H 1920</i>	Newspapers on Special Topics and Ethnic Newspapers
<i>H 1925</i>	Parks, Reserves, National Monuments, Etc.
<i>H 1927</i>	Periodicals
<i>H 1928</i>	Personal Narratives
<i>H 1929</i>	Philosophy
<i>H 1935</i>	Pictorial Works
<i>H 1942</i>	Politics and Government
<i>H 1943.5</i>	Popular Works
<i>H 1945</i>	Postage Stamps on Specific Topics
<i>H 1945.5</i>	Posters
<i>H 1949</i>	Professional Ethics
<i>H 1955</i>	Public Opinion
<i>H 1965</i>	Publishers' Catalogs
<i>H 1969</i>	Quotations and Maxims
<i>H 1970</i>	Railroads
<i>H 1975</i>	Readers
<i>H 1980</i>	Reference Books
<i>H 1995</i>	Regimental Histories
<i>H 1996</i>	Relations and Military Relations
<i>H 1997</i>	Religion
<i>H 1998</i>	Religious Aspects of Topics
<i>H 2015</i>	Religious Denominations or Religions as Subdivisions
<i>H 2015.5</i>	Religious Life
<i>H 2016</i>	Religious Life and Customs
<i>H 2020</i>	Research
<i>H 2021</i>	Reviews
<i>H 2032</i>	Sermons
<i>H 2040</i>	Simulation Methods in Special Fields
<i>H 2055</i>	Social Conditions
<i>H 2057</i>	Social Life and Customs
<i>H 2060</i>	Societies
<i>H 2070</i>	Software and Works about Software
<i>H 2075</i>	Songs and Music
<i>H 2080</i>	Sources
<i>H 2083</i>	Specifications

# Contents

## VOLUME FOUR (Continued)

### *Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, Etc.*

<i>H 2095</i>	Statistics
<i>H 2098</i>	Streets and Roads
<i>H 2100</i>	Strikes and Lockouts
<i>H 2110</i>	Study and Teaching
<i>H 2145</i>	Supplementary Works
<i>H 2149</i>	Surveys
<i>H 2160</i>	Tables
<i>H 2184</i>	Terms and Phrases
<i>H 2185</i>	Territories and Possessions
<i>H 2186</i>	Testing
<i>H 2187</i>	Textbooks
<i>H 2190</i>	Texts
<i>H 2217</i>	Training
<i>H 2219</i>	Translating
<i>H 2220</i>	Translations
<i>H 2225</i>	Transportation
<i>H 2227</i>	Treaties
<i>H 2228</i>	Trials
<i>H 2230</i>	Visual Materials and Non-Music Sound Recordings
<i>H 2232</i>	Vocational Guidance
<i>H 2400</i>	Yearbooks

### *Glossary*

<i>Appendix A</i>	Abbreviations
<i>Appendix B</i>	Capitalization
<i>Appendix C</i>	Diacritics and Special Characters
<i>Appendix D</i>	Punctuation

### *Update Information*

### *Index*

## Arabic/Persian Subject Headings H 181

**BACKGROUND:** *This instruction sheet provides guidelines for supplying parallel non-Roman subject heading fields in Arabic/Persian cataloging.*

*Note: During the period 1993-2007, the Library of Congress used the Research Libraries Group's RLIN (Research Libraries Information Network) system to create and manage its Arabic and Persian bibliographic records. In 2007, following the merger of the Research Libraries Group with OCLC, Inc., the Library of Congress began using its own integrated library system to create and manage these records.*

**1. General rule.** Supply a parallel non-Roman subject heading field when an Arabic or Persian heading from the name authority file is assigned, regardless of whether the heading is established in conventional or romanized form. *Examples:*

*Personal names:*

```
600 00 $6 880-05 $a Ibn Khaldūn $d 1332-1406.  
880 04 $6 600-05/(3/r $a [NON-ROMAN DATA]
```

```
600 10 $6 880-06 $a Qaddafi, Muammar $x Views on women.  
880 14 $6 600-06/(3/r $a [NON-ROMAN DATA]
```

```
600 00 $6 880-07 $a Hussein, $c King of Jordan, $d 1935-  
880 14 $6 600-07/(3/r $a [NON-ROMAN DATA] $c [NON-ROMAN DATA]
```

```
600 10 $6 880-06 $a Khomeini, Ruhollah.  
880 14 $6 600-06/(3/r $a [NON-ROMAN DATA], [NON-ROMAN DATA]
```

# H 181 Arabic/Persian Subject Headings

## 1. General rule.

*Examples: (Continued)*

### *Corporate bodies:*

610 10 \$6 880-05 \$a Egypt. \$b Mahkamat al-Maqd.  
880 14 \$6 610-05/(3/r \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA] \$b [NON-ROMAN DATA]

610 20 \$6 880-06 \$a League of Arab States.  
880-24 \$6 610-06/(3/r \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA]

610 20 \$6 880-05 \$a Dār al- 'Ilm (Tripoli, Lebanon)  
880 24 \$6 610-05/(3/r \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA] ([NON-ROMAN DATA])

610 10 \$6 880-06 \$a Egypt. \$b Wizārat al-Siyāḥah. \$bWakālat  
al-Wizārah lil-Takḥṭiṭ.  
880 14 \$6 610-06/(3/r \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA] \$b [NON-ROMAN DATA]

### *Uniform titles:*

630 00 \$6 880-05 \$a Arabian nights.  
880-04 \$6 630-05/(3/r \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA]

630 00 \$6 880-05 \$a Kalilah wa-Dimnah.  
880-04 \$6 630-05/(3/r \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA]

### *Name/titles:*

600 10 \$6 880-06 \$a Qaddafi, Muammar \$t Kitāb al-akhdar.  
880 14 \$6 600-06/(3/r \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA] \$t [NON-ROMAN DATA]

600 00 \$6 880-05 \$a Ibn Khaldūn \$d 1332-1406. \$t Kitāb al-  
'ibar. \$p Muqaddimah.  
880 04 \$6 600-05/(3/r \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA] \$t [NON-ROMAN DATA]  
\$p [NON-ROMAN DATA]

## Arabic/Persian Subject Headings H 181

### 1. General rule.

*Examples: (Continued)*

#### *Local geographic names (not countries):*

651 #0 \$6 880-05 \$a Kirrmān (Iran : Province) \$x Economic conditions.

880 #4 \$6 651-05/(3/r \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA] ([NON-ROMAN DATA]))

651 #0 \$6 880-05 \$a Asyūt (Egypt) \$x Commerce \$x History.

880 #4 \$6 651-05/(3/r \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA] ([NON-ROMAN DATA]))

650 #0 \$a Education \$z Egypt \$z Asyūt \$x History.

880 #4 \$6 651-00/(3/r \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA] [NON-ROMAN DATA])

*Note: Supply the non-Roman heading for a local geographic name regardless of whether the name is used as a main heading in a 651 field or as a \$z subfield in a 650 field. In the latter case, use field 880 for the non-Roman data; use tag 651 and an occurrence number of "-00" in subfield \$6 followed by the non-Roman data in subfield \$a.*

Do not supply parallel non-Roman fields to subject headings established only in the subject authority file. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Murābahah.

650 #0 \$a Waqf.

651 #0 \$a Biqā' Valley (Lebanon)

651 #0 \$a Hasa Oasis (Saudi Arabia)

Do not supply parallel non-Roman fields in Arabic or Persian for names foreign to the language of the work being cataloged. *Examples:*

600 10 \$a Marx, Karl, \$d 1818-1883.

600 00 \$a Plato.

610 20 \$a European Economic Community.

610 10 \$a United States. \$b Embassy (Jordan)

*Exception:* Supply parallel non-Roman fields for Persian names in Arabic works and Arabic names in Persian works.

## H 181 Arabic/Persian Subject Headings

2. *Form of name.* Use the established form of the name for both persons and corporate bodies. Omit dates in personal names.

3. *Content designation of parallel non-Roman fields.* Generally use the same numeric tag, subfield codes, and first indicator as the corresponding romanized heading field, but observe the following special provisions:

- For local geographic names that appear as \$z subfields of 650 fields, use field 880 for the non-Roman data; use tag 651 and an occurrence number of “-00” in subfield \$6 followed by the non-Roman data in subfield \$a, as shown in the example on p. 3.
- Use **4** as the second indicator in all cases.



## Chinese/Japanese/Korean Subject Headings H 182

**BACKGROUND:** *This instruction sheet provides guidelines for supplying parallel non-Roman subject heading fields in CJK cataloging. The general principle followed is that non-Roman CJK subject headings are supplied for subject heading fields or parts thereof where the romanized portion of the established name heading corresponds exactly to official pronunciation and LC romanization rules for the CJK language.*

*Note: During the period 1993-2007, the Library of Congress used the Research Libraries Group's RLIN (Research Libraries Information Network) system to create and manage its CJK bibliographic records. In 2007, following the merger of the Research Libraries Group with OCLC, Inc., the Library of Congress began using its own integrated library system to create and manage these records.*

**1. General rule.** Supply parallel non-Roman subject heading fields only for name headings that are assigned as subject headings. Use the 880 field, as illustrated in examples throughout this instruction sheet. *Examples:*

```
600 10 $6 880-05 $a Zuoqiu, Ming. $t Zuoqiu.  
880-14 $6 600-05/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA] $t [NON-ROMAN DATA]
```

```
610 20 $6 880-06 $a Toyota Jidōsha Kōgyō Kabushiki Kaisha  
$x History.  
880 24 $6 880-06/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA] $x History.
```

Do not supply parallel non-Roman fields for headings that are established as subject headings, even if they are established according to LC romanization rules. For example, do not supply parallel non-Roman fields to headings such as **Feng shui; Tai chi; Tōhoku Region (Japan)–History;** or **Ukiyoe.**

**2. Exact correspondence to official pronunciation and LC romanization.** Supply parallel non-Roman headings in the following situations:

- when there is one-to-one equivalency between the romanized portion of the name heading, official pronunciation, and LC romanization rules for the CJK language. *Exclude* parenthetical qualifiers and dates. (For guidelines concerning parenthetical qualifiers, see sec. 4, below).
- when there is one-to-one equivalency between the romanized portion of the subfielded part of a name heading, official pronunciation, and LC romanization rules for the CJK language.

## H 182 Chinese/Japanese/Korean Subject Headings

### 2. Exact correspondence to official pronunciation and LC romanization. (Continued)

Do not supply parallel non-Roman headings for name headings that use conventional forms that do not conform to official pronunciation and LC romanization rules.

*Examples:*

651 #0 \$a China \$x History \$y Cultural Revolution, 1966-1976.  
*[no parallel non-Roman field; **China** is conventional for **Zhongguo**]*

610 10 \$6 880-05 \$a China. \$b Zhongguo ren min jie fang jun.  
880 14 \$6 880-05/\$1 \$a China. \$b [NON-ROMAN DATA]

600 00 \$a Confucius \$v Bibliography.  
*[no parallel non-Roman field; **Confucius** is conventional for **Kongzi**]*

600 00 \$6 880-06 \$a Confucius. \$t Chun qiu.  
880-04 \$6 600-06/\$1 \$a Confucius. \$t [NON-ROMAN DATA]

651 #0 \$a Hong Kong (China) \$x Description and travel.  
*[**Hong Kong** is conventional for **Xianggang**]*

610 20 \$6 880-05 \$a Xianggang Zhongshan Tu shu guan.  
880 24 \$6 610-05/\$1 \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA]

651 #0 Japan \$x Officials and employees.  
*[**Japan** is conventional for **Nihon**]*

610 10 \$6 880-06 \$a Japan. \$b Monbushō.  
880 14 \$6 880-06/\$1 \$a Japan. [NON-ROMAN DATA]

610 20 \$6 880-05 \$a Nihon Daigaku \$x Entrance examinations.  
880 24 \$6 610-05/\$1 \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA] \$x Entrance examinations.

610 20 \$6 880-06 \$a Ōsaka Shiritsu Shizenshi Hakubutsukan  
\$v Catalogs  
880 24 \$6 610-06/\$1 \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA] \$v Catalogs.

600 10 \$a Sun, Yat-sen, \$d 1866-1925 \$x Childhood and youth.  
*[**Sun, Yat-sen** is conventional for **Sun, Yixian**]*

## Chinese/Japanese/Korean Subject Headings H 182

### 2. *Exact correspondence to official pronunciation and LC romanization.*

*Examples: (Continued)*

```
600 10 $6 880-05 $a Sun, Yat-sen, $d 1866-1925. $t San min zhu yi.  
880 14 $6 880-05? $1 $a Sun, Yat-sen, $d 1866-1925. $t [NON-ROMAN  
DATA]
```

### 3. *Geographic subdivisions.* Do not supply *NON-ROMAN DATA* for geographic subdivisions (subfield \$z). *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $6 880-05 $a Buzen-shi (Japan) $x Antiquities.  
880 #4 $6 651-05/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA] $x Antiquities.  
650 #0 $a Buddhist antiquities $z Japan $z Antiquities.  
  
651 #0 $6 880-06 $a Kyōngsang-namdo (Korea) $x Description and  
travel.  
880 #4 $6 651-06/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA] (Korea) $x Description  
and travel.  
650 #0 $a Cities and towns $z Korea (South) $z Kyōngsang-namdo.
```

### 4. *Qualifiers.* Do not supply *NON-ROMAN DATA* for additions to names enclosed in parentheses, that is, qualifiers of descriptive name headings. *Examples:*

```
610 20 $6 880-05 $a Nyohōji (Buzen-shi, Japan)  
880 24 $6 610-05/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA] (Buzen-shi, Japan)
```

### 5. *Choice of non-Roman form.* Choose the non-Roman form as found elsewhere in the work, or any source, as appropriate. Use the form of the Chinese character as found elsewhere in the record or in the work. If the form is not found, supply the traditional form of the Chinese character. For personal names in the parallel non-Roman field, do not follow the surname with a comma. Instead, leave a space. *Examples:*

```
600 10 $6 880-05 $a Nada, Inada. $d 1929-  
880 14 $6 600-05/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA], $d 1929-  
  
600 10 $6 880-05 $a Matsunaga, Yasuzaemon, $d 1875-1971.  
880 14 $6 600-05/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA], $d 1875-1971.
```

## H 182 Chinese/Japanese/Korean Subject Headings

### 5. Choice of non-Roman form.

*Examples: (Continued)*

610 20 \$6 880-05 \$a Chiba-ken Bunkazai Sentā.  
880 24 \$6 610-05/\$1 \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA].

651 #0 \$6 880-05 \$a T'ai-pei hsien (Taiwan) \$x Description and  
travel.  
880 #4 \$6 651-05/\$1 \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA] (Taiwan) \$x Description and  
travel.

610 20 \$6 880-05 \$a Zhongguo gong chan dang.  
880 24 \$6 610-05/\$1 \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA].

610 20 \$6 880-05 \$a Zhongguo gong chan dang \$x History.  
880 24 \$6 610-05/\$1 \$a [NON-ROMAN DATA] \$x History.

**6. Content designation of parallel non-Roman fields.** Use the same numeric tag, subfield codes, and first indicator of the corresponding romanized parallel field. Assign **4** as the second indicator.

## Music Heading Authority Records H 250

### 1. Creation of records. (Continued)

**b. Headings consisting of combinations of terms that must be separately established, unless the headings are governed by the patterns described in sec. 2.**

**(1) Music of a single instrument qualified by style of music or playing. Examples:**

```
150 ## $a Trumpet music (Jazz)
150 ## $a Piano music (Ragtime)
150 ## $a Bass guitar music (Rock)
```

The term in the qualifier must also be established as a heading for music in that style:

```
150 ## $a Jazz
150 ## $a Ragtime music
150 ## $a Rock music
```

Include in the record for music of the instrument a broader term for the style and a scope note to define the heading, whose usage is broader than that of similar headings without a qualifier for style of music. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Trumpet music (Jazz)
550 ## $w g $a Jazz
680 ## $i This heading is assigned to jazz for
unaccompanied trumpet

150 ## $a Piano music (Ragtime)
550 ## $w g $a Ragtime music
680 ## $i $a This heading is assigned to ragtime music
for unaccompanied piano

150 ## $a Bass guitar music (Rock)
550 ## $w g $a Rock music
680 ## $i This heading is assigned to rock music for
unaccompanied bass guitar
```

**(2) Music for combinations of two instruments. Provide references from the instruments in reverse order or from other appropriate phrases. Examples:**

```
150 ## $a Duets (Unspecified instrument and synthesizer)
450 ## $a Duets (Synthesizer and unspecified instrument)

150 ## $a Piano music (Pianos (2))
450 ## $a Piano duets

150 ## $a Violin and piano music
450 ## $a Piano and violin music
```

## H 250 Music Heading Authority Records

### 1. Creation of records.

**b. Headings consisting of combinations of terms that must be separately established, unless the headings are governed by the patterns described in sec. 2. (Continued)**

**(3) Headings with qualifiers for language of text.** Establish the heading in inverted form (cf. H 306, sec. 2). Provide a reference from the direct form. The language, language group, or dialect must also be established. *Examples:*

150 ## \$a Buddhist hymns, Japanese  
450 ## \$a Japanese Buddhist hymns

150 ## \$a Folk songs, Norwegian  
450 ## \$a Norwegian folk songs

150 ## \$a Children's songs, Papiamentu  
450 ## \$a Papiamentu children's songs

### c. Special rules for certain categories of headings.

**(1) Headings that may be qualified by language.** The following headings may be qualified by language of text:

150 ## \$a Ballads  
150 ## \$a Buddhist hymns  
150 ## \$a Bhajans  
150 ## \$a Canzonets (Part songs)  
150 ## \$a Carols  
150 ## \$a Children's songs  
150 ## \$a Folk songs  
150 ## \$a Hindu hymns  
150 ## \$a Hymns  
150 ## \$a Jaina hymns  
150 ## \$a Part songs  
150 ## \$a Revolutionary ballads and songs  
150 ## \$a Sikh hymns  
150 ## \$a Songs

## General See Also References H 371

**1. General rule.** When establishing new headings, provide general see also references to existing headings or free-floating subdivisions, as appropriate, in 360 fields according to the procedures given in H 200, sec. 7. Follow the procedures in H 195, sec. 6 to add general see also references to existing headings.

**2. General see also references vs. specific references.** Provide specific broader term references in preference to a single general see also reference whenever possible. Make new general see also references only in the following circumstances:

- To refer from a generic heading to a free-floating subdivision. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Books $v Reviews
360 ## $i subdivision $a Book reviews $i under subjects
```

*Note: Whenever a formerly non-free-floating subdivision is declared free-floating, cancel all specific broader term references that have been made to the subdivision, and provide instead a general see also reference. When, for example, the subdivision –**Alcohol use** was made free-floating under classes of persons and ethnic groups, specific BT references from **Alcoholism** to the subdivision were cancelled and a single general reference established in their place.*

- To refer from a subject heading to a category or type of name heading that is normally not included in the subject authority file. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Church buildings
360 ## $i names of individual churches
```

- To refer from a generic heading to a group of headings that begin with the same word. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Science
360 ## $i headings beginning with the word $a Scientific
```

**3. General see also references and free-floating subdivisions.** Although *new* general see also references are made only when a subdivision is free-floating, many general see also references to subdivisions that are not free-floating were made in the past and remain in the subject authority file. Therefore, the presence of a general see also reference to a subdivision does not automatically authorize the assignment of that subdivision on a free-floating basis. Treat subdivisions as free-floating only in accordance with the provisions of H 1095 or other free-floating subdivision lists in H 1100-H 1200.

## H 371 General See Also References

**4. Formulating general see also references.** For the sake of consistency in the subject authority file, use, whenever possible, the following formulations in constructing general see also references:

- References to subject headings:

360 ## \$i headings beginning with the word \$a [...]

- References to name headings:

360 ## \$i names of individual [...]

- References to subdivisions used under subject headings (general):

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under subjects

- References to subdivisions used under pattern headings (cf. H 1146):

(H 1147)

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual animals and groups of animals, e.g. \$a Cattle-[...] <or \$a Fishes-[...]>

(H 1148)

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual art forms and headings for national or ethnic art, e.g. \$a Art, Italian-[...]

(H 1149)

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual chemicals and groups of chemicals, e.g. \$a Copper-[...] <or \$a Insulin-[...]>

(H 1149.5)

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under names of countries, cities, etc., e.g. \$a Great Britain-Colonies-[...]

(H 1150)

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual diseases and types of diseases, e.g. \$a Cancer-[...] <or \$a Tuberculosis-[...]>

(H 1151)

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual educational institutions, e.g. \$a Harvard University-[...]



## General See Also References H 371

### 4. Formulating general see also references.

- References to subdivisions used under pattern headings: (*Continued*)

- (H 1151.5) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under types of educational institutions, e.g. \$a Universities and colleges-[...]
- (H 1153) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under types of industries, e.g. \$a Construction industry-[...] <or \$a Retail trade-[...]>
- (H 1154) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual languages and groups of languages, e.g. \$a English language-[...] <or \$a French language-[...] or \$a Romance languages-[...]>
- (H 1154.5) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual legal topics, e.g. \$a Labor laws and legislation-[...]
- (H 1155) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under names of individual legislative bodies, e.g. \$a United States. Congress-[...]
- (H 1155.2) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under groups of literary authors, e.g. \$a Authors, English-[...]
- (H 1155.6) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual literary works entered under author, e.g. \$a Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616. Hamlet-[...]

## H 371 General See Also References

### 4. Formulating general see also references.

- References to subdivisions used under pattern headings: (*Continued*)

- (H 1155.8) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual literary works entered under title, e.g. \$a Beowulf-[...]
- (H 1156) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual literatures, e.g. \$a English literature-[...]
- (H 1158) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual materials and types of materials, e.g. \$a Concrete-[...] <or \$a Metals-[...]>
- (H 1159) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under military services, e.g. \$a United States-Armed Forces-[...] <or \$a United States. Air Force-[...] or \$a United States. Army-[...] or \$a United States. Marine Corps-[...] or \$a United States. Navy-[...]>
- (H 1160) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under forms and types of musical compositions, e.g. \$a Operas-[...]
- (H 1161) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual musical instruments and families of instruments, e.g. \$a Piano-[...]
- (H 1164) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual organs and regions of the body, e.g. \$a Foot-[...] <or \$a Heart-[...]>
- (H 1180) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual plants and groups of plants, e.g. \$a Corn-[...]
- (H 1185) 360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual religions, e.g. \$a Buddhism-[...]

## General See Also References H 371

### 4. Formulating general see also references.

- References to subdivisions used under pattern headings: (*Continued*)

(H 1186)

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under names of individual religious and monastic orders, e.g. \$a Jesuits-[...]

(H 1187)

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual Christian denominations, e.g. \$a Catholic Church-[...]

(H 1188)

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under uniform titles of sacred works, e.g. \$a Bible-[...]

(H 1195)

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual land vehicles and types of land vehicles, e.g. \$a Automobiles-[...]

(H 1200)

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under individual wars, e.g. \$a United States-History-Civil War, 1861-1865-[...] <or \$a World War, 1939-1945-[...]>

- References to subdivisions used under name headings:

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under names of individual [...]

- References to subdivisions used under place names:

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under names of countries, cities, etc.  
*[for subdivisions used under any place name]*

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under names of countries, etc.  
*[for subdivisions used only under places larger than cities]*

## H 371 General See Also References

### 4. Formulating general see also references.

- References to subdivisions used under place names: (*Continued*)

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under names of cities  
[for subdivisions used only under cities]

If several of these elements are incorporated into a single reference, use the following order in constructing the reference:

360 ## \$i subdivision \$a [...] \$i under [type of place name];  
also subdivision \$a [...] \$i under names of [category  
of name headings] or subjects [or individual wars,  
animals, etc.]; also headings beginning with the word  
\$a [...]; \$i and names of individual [category of name  
headings]

Note that each clause begins with the word **also** except for the final clause which begins with the word **and**. Each clause is separated from the following clause by a semicolon. This phraseology should serve as the pattern for the most common situations in which general see also references are required; slight modifications may be required for especially complex or unusual situations.

### 5. Providing examples in the reference.

*a. Examples provided for clarity.* Past practice, reflected in the subject authority file, was to provide examples routinely to illustrate nearly all general references. This practice is no longer followed. Instead, provide examples in the reference only if they are required for clarity. *Examples:*

150 ## \$a Time management  
360 ## \$i subdivision \$a Time management \$i under classes  
of persons and ethnic groups  
*No example →  
needed for clarity*

## Establishing Certain Entities in the H 405 Name or Subject Authority File

### **BACKGROUND:** (Continued)

*Lists of the categories of headings falling into both these groups are on pp. 5-13. This instruction sheet describes the procedures to be followed when it is necessary for a subject cataloger to establish a heading in one of these categories, or to request a descriptive cataloger to establish a heading for subject usage.*

**1. General rule.** Whenever a new heading is needed for a named entity, consult the two lists on pp. 5-13 to determine whether the heading is categorized as a Group 1 or Group 2 heading. Follow the procedures appropriate to the group. If neither the precise category, nor a broader category that encompasses the precise category, nor a very closely analogous category is found in either of the two groups, bring the matter to the attention of the Cataloging Policy and Support Office (CPSO) for an interpretation and possible addition of the category to one of the lists.

**2. Group one headings.** First search to determine whether the required heading has already been established as an AACR2 name heading. If so, use the heading as established. If not, establish it as a name heading or request a descriptive cataloger to do so.

If a heading in this category has been established as a *subject* heading, submit a proposal to delete the subject authority record according to the procedures in H 193 after it has been established it as a name heading.

### **3. Group two headings.**

**a. Heading required for subject cataloging purposes.** First search to determine whether the entity has already been established as a name heading according to former guidelines. After making this determination, proceed as follows:

**(1) Name authority record not found.** Submit a proposal to establish the entity as a subject heading, following the standard procedures described in H 200, as well as any special procedures described in individual instruction sheets appropriate to particular categories of named entities, for example, H 1334 for buildings and structures, H 1925 for parks, etc.

Proposals of this type appear in the main alphabetical section of the weekly list and are treated as subject headings.

## H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

### 3. Group two headings.

#### a. *Heading required for subject cataloging purposes. (Continued)*

(2) *AACR2 name authority record found.* If the record does *not* have a 667 field with the notation **Subj Cat Manual/AACR2**, consult CPSO to determine whether it should be canceled as a name heading and re-established as a subject heading.

(3) *Pre-AACR2 name authority record found.* Submit a proposal to establish it as a subject heading, as described in sec. 1.a., above. Notify CPSO of the invalid name heading so that the name authority record can be deleted.

b. *Heading needed for use as descriptive access point.* Follow the guidelines in the *Descriptive Cataloging Manual*, Z1, Appendix 1: Ambiguous Entities, sec. 1.2.(e) and sec. 3.1.

## Establishing Certain Entities in the H 405 Name or Subject Authority File

### *GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS*

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Experiment stations	110
Expositions	111
Factories	110
Fairs	111
Festivals and celebrations	111
Fish hatcheries	110
Folk festivals and celebrations	111
Forest districts	151
Forests (Administrative agencies) <sup>4</sup>	110
Funds	110
Funeral homes, mortuaries	110
Galleries	110
Games (Events)	111
Halfway houses	110
Helplines, hotlines	110
Herbariums	110
Hospitals	110
Hotels	110
Individual works of art	100, 110, 130
Jurisdictions, Ancient (other than cities)	151
Laboratories	110
Libraries	110
Library districts	110
Markets	110
Military installations (active; also all after 1899)	151
Mining districts	151
Monasteries	110
Morgues	110
Mosques	110
Motels	110

---

<sup>4</sup>Headings in this category are always qualified by the term (**Agency**). Headings for forests as geographic entities are in Group 2, established as subject headings, tagged 151, and qualified according to subject cataloging conventions.

## H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

### GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Motion pictures	130
Museums	110
Night clubs	110
Nursing homes	110
Observatories	110
Old age homes	110
Opera houses	110
Orphanages	110
Parades	111
Park districts	151
Parks (Administrative agencies) <sup>5</sup>	110
Planetariums	110
Planned communities	151
Plans (Programs)	110
Poorhouses	110
Port authorities	110
Prisons	110
Projects, plans, etc.	110
Public celebrations, pageants, anniversaries	111
Publishers' imprints	110
Pueblos	151
Races (Contests)	111
Radio programs	130
Railroads	110
Recreation districts	151
Religious denominations	110
Research stations	110
Reserves (Administrative agencies) <sup>5</sup>	110
Restaurants	110
Sanatoriums	110
Sanitation districts	151

---

<sup>5</sup>Headings in this category are always qualified by the term (**Agency**). Headings for parks as geographic entities are in Group 2, established as subject headings, tagged 151, and qualified according to subject cataloging conventions.



## Establishing Certain Entities in the H 405 Name or Subject Authority File

### *GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS*

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Satellites, Artificial	110
School districts	110
Schools	110
Service stations	110
Ships	110
Shipyards	110
Shows (Exhibitions)	111
Software, Computer	130 <sup>6</sup>
Sound recording labels	110
Space vehicles	110
Sporting events	111
Stock exchanges	110
Stores, Retail	110
Studies (Research projects)	110
Synagogues	110
Television programs	130
Temples (in use; excludes temples in ruins)	110
Theater companies	110
Tournaments	111
Tribes (as legal entities only; U.S. only)	151
Truck stops	110
Undertakers	110
Universities	110
Utility districts	151
Water districts	151
Web sites	130
Works of art, Individual	100, 110, 130
Zoological gardens	110

---

<sup>6</sup>Although headings in this category are generally established under title and tagged 130, those that are established under personal or corporate names are tagged 100 or 110.

## H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

*GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS:* Named entities always established according to subject cataloging conventions with authority records that reside in either the name authority file or the subject authority file.

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Amusement parks	151
Apartment houses	110
Aqueducts	151
Arches	150
Arenas	110
Armories	110
Artists' groups <sup>7</sup>	150
Asian conglomerate corporations	110
Astronomical features (asteroids, comets, galaxies, planets, etc.)	151
Auditoriums	110
Awards	150
Bathhouses	110
Baths, Ancient	110
Bridges	151
Building details	150
Buildings, Private	110
Buildings occupied by corporate bodies	110
Bus terminals	110
Camps	151
Canals	151
Capitols	110
Castles	110
Celestial bodies	151
Cities, Extinct (Pre-1500)	151
City halls	110

---

<sup>7</sup>Headings in this category include artists' groups that are often informally organized, may not be self-named, and do not play a role in collectively promoting and marketing their work. Headings for artists' groups that are self-identified by a particular name and function as a business firm in creating, publishing, promoting, and marketing their works are established as corporate entities according to descriptive cataloging conventions.

## Formulating Geographic Headings H 690

**BACKGROUND:** *Headings for geographic names fall into two categories: (1) names of political jurisdictions, and (2) non-jurisdictional geographic names. Headings in the first category are established according to descriptive cataloging conventions with authority records that reside in the name authority file. Since these jurisdictional name headings are routinely assigned as subject headings, frequently in combination with non-free-floating subdivisions, many of them were also represented by authority records in the subject authority file. To alleviate the confusion caused by duplicate authority records, the Library of Congress ceased creating new subject authority records for name headings in January 1995 and began a project to delete existing duplicate authority records for name headings from the subject authority file. Headings in the second category are established according to guidelines in this instruction sheet with authority records that reside in the subject authority file. Headings for entities having geographic extent, including certain types of engineering constructions, are treated as geographic headings. The following is a representative list of such entities:*

*Archaeological sites, historic sites, etc.*  
*Areas and regions (when not free-floating)*  
*Canals*  
*Dams*  
*Extinct cities (pre-1500)*  
*Farms, ranches, gardens*  
*Forests, grasslands, etc.*  
*Geographic features (for example, caves, deserts, non-jurisdictional islands, lakes, mountains, ocean currents, plains, rivers, seas, steppes, undersea features)*  
*Geologic basins, geologic formations, etc.*  
*Mines*  
*Parks, reserves, refuges, recreation areas, etc.*  
*Reservoirs*  
*Roads, streets, trails*  
*Valleys*

*This instruction sheet provides guidelines for formulating the substantive portion of non-jurisdictional geographic names established as subject headings. For procedures for qualifying geographic names, see H 810.*

## H 690 Formulating Geographic Headings

**1. *Obtaining the BGN approved form of name.*** For names of the United States, the Geographic Names Information System (GNIS), U.S. Geological Survey (U.S. Board on Geographic Names (BGN) domestic names system) is available on the World Wide Web. GNIS may be accessed and queried at <<http://geonames.usgs.gov/domestic/index.html>>. If the World Wide Web is not available, printouts of BGN's Geographic Names Information System Alphabetical Finding List for individual states of the United States may be consulted instead.

For foreign geographic names, the GEONet Names Server (GNS) of the National Geospatial-Intelligence Agency (the BGN foreign names system) is also available on the World Wide Web. It may be accessed and queried at <<http://earth-info.nga.mil/gns/html/index.html>>. If the World Wide Web is not available, gazetteers published by BGN may be consulted instead.

**2. *Additional authority research.*** Although the BGN decision, when it is obtained, is generally preferred over any other name forms, additional authority work is usually required for the following reasons:

- The BGN decision may not in itself be sufficient to determine if name conflicts exist and further qualification of the heading is necessary.
- In cases of conflict, research can confirm that the BGN decision does in fact refer to the same place discussed in the work being cataloged.
- For geographic names in non-English-speaking countries, reference sources may aid in the translation of generic terms, or may justify the choice of the conventional English form when BGN has supplied the name only in the vernacular form.
- Variant forms of the geographic name found in reference sources are useful as UF references in addition to the variants provided by BGN.

## Formulating Geographic Headings H 690

### 3. *Selecting the form of the heading.*

#### *b. English vs. vernacular form.*

Use the vernacular form under the following circumstances: (*Continued*)

- if the entity in question is best known in the English-speaking world by its vernacular name, for example, **Rio Grande; Blanc, Mont (France and Italy)**.

Use English-language gazetteers and reference sources to determine whether an entity is known in its vernacular form in the English-speaking world. If a vernacular form is used and it includes the generic term for the feature, do not add the English generic term to the heading. For example, **Tien Shan** is a conventional name which includes the Chinese term for mountains. Do not add **Mountains** to the heading.

### 4. *Arrangement of elements appearing in the name.* If necessary, rearrange the elements of the name so that the distinctive portion of the name occurs in the initial position.

*a. Names in English.* For entities in English-speaking countries, and for entities that have a conventional English name, invert the heading if necessary to put the distinctive portion of the name in the initial position. *Examples:*

<i>English Name</i>	<i>Name Inverted</i>
Firth of Forth	Forth, Firth of
Lake Erie	Erie, Lake
Mount Abbot	Abbot, Mount
Gulf of Mexico	Mexico, Gulf of
River Wye	Wye, River

*Note: For purposes of these illustrations the geographic qualifiers are omitted.*

*b. Names in foreign languages.* Translate the name and rearrange the elements to put the distinctive portion of the name in the initial position. Since the resulting heading is not inverted, do not put a comma between the elements. *Example:*

<i>Vernacular</i>	<i>Final Form of Heading</i>
Río Jiloca	Jiloca River (Spain)

## H 690 Formulating Geographic Headings

**5. Abbreviations.** Spell out in full all words in the substantive portion of the name. For provisions on the use of abbreviations in qualifiers, see H 810. *Example:*

Saint Johns River (Fla.)

[*not* St. Johns River (Fla.)]

**6. Initial articles.** Anglicize names of geographic features that are located in non-English-speaking countries and that begin with an article by dropping the initial article and including a generic term in English describing the feature. Retain initial articles for non-English names in English-speaking countries. For English names beginning with the word **The** as an integral part of the name, retain **The** and invert the name. *Examples:*

<i>Name of Entity</i>	<i>Final Form of Heading</i>
La Huasteca [ <i>a region in Mexico</i> ]	Huasteca Region (Mexico)
Les Cévennes [ <i>mountains in France</i> ]	Cévennes Mountains (France)
Los Olmos Creek [ <i>a stream in Texas</i> ]	Los Olmos Creek (Tex.)
The Fens [ <i>a region in England</i> ]	Fens, The (England)
The Sound [ <i>conventional English name for sound between Denmark and Sweden</i> ]	Sound, The (Denmark and Sweden)

**7. Transliteration.** As a general rule, transliterate geographic names in non-Roman scripts by means of LC transliteration tables. If BGN provides a romanized form in conflict with LC's policy for the romanization of a particular script, convert the name to the LC form. However, if it is clear that a non-LC-romanized form is more commonly used in English-language reference sources, establish the heading using that form, and add a 451 field with the LC-romanized form.

*Note: During 1999 the Library of Congress changed a limited number of name and subject headings that contain names of Chinese provinces and major cities from conventional to pinyin romanized forms. In October 2000 the Library discontinued use of the Wade-Giles system of romanization of Chinese in favor of pinyin in name and subject headings except for geographic names of Taiwan, which continue to use Wade-Giles.*

1. *Hawaii as a heading or subdivision.* Assign **Hawaii** as a subject heading or geographic subdivision for works dealing with the state of Hawaii regardless of the period covered. *Examples:*

651 #0 \$a Hawaii \$x Antiquities.  
650 #0 \$a Japanese Americans \$z Hawaii.  
650 #0 \$a Housing \$z Hawaii \$z Hawaii Island.

2. *Geographic qualifiers.*

a. *Hawaii as a qualifier.* Use (**Hawaii**) as a qualifier in Hawaiian geographic names. Do not use individual island names except in cases of conflict.

*Examples:*

151 ## \$a Pearl Harbor (Hawaii)  
151 ## \$a Lanai (Hawaii)

b. *Entities in cities.* For entities within a city, add the city name before **Hawaii** in the qualifier, for example, **Hawaii State Capitol (Honolulu, Hawaii)**.

c. *Conflicts.* In cases of conflict, add the island or island group name before **Hawaii** in the qualifier. The main islands are:

Hawaii Island (Hawaii)	Maui (Hawaii)
Kahoolawe (Hawaii)	Molokai (Hawaii)
Kauai (Hawaii)	Niihau (Hawaii)
Lanai (Hawaii)	Oahu (Hawaii)
Leeward Islands (Hawaii)	

*Examples:*

151 ## \$a Kailua Bay (Oahu, Hawaii)  
151 ## \$a Kailua Bay (Hawaii Island, Hawaii)  
  
151 ## \$a Kona (Hawaii Island, Hawaii)  
151 ## \$a Kona (Niihau, Hawaii)  
151 ## \$a Kona (Molokai, Hawaii)





## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Authorship**

Use under names of individual persons and individual works entered under title, under disciplines, and under literary, motion picture, radio, television, and video forms and genres.

**\$x Authorship \$v Style manuals**

Use under disciplines

**\$x Automatic control**

Use under individual technical processes and equipment.

**\$x Automation**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies, industries, buildings, processes, and systems.

See also –**Effect of automation on** under occupational groups and types of employees.

**\$x Autonomous communities (H 713)**

Use under headings of the type **[topic]–Spain** for works discussing collectively the autonomous communities of Spain in relation to the topic, for example, **Law–Spain–Autonomous communities**.

**\$x Autonomous regions (H 713)**

Use under headings of the type **[topic]–China** for works discussing collectively the autonomous regions of China in relation to the topic, for example, **Minorities–China–Autonomous regions**.

**\$x Awards (May Subd Geog) (H 1265)**

Use under names of individual persons, corporate bodies, and military services, and under topical headings. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under topical headings.

**\$x Barrier-free design (May Subd Geog)**

Use under types of buildings, structures, and facilities.

**\$x Biblical teaching (H 1295)**

Use under religious or secular topics for works on the theological and/or ethical teachings of the Bible, or its individual parts, on that topic.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$v Bibliography** (*H 1205; H 1322; H 1325; H 1670*)

Use under subjects.

See also –**Imprints** under names of countries, cities, etc.

**\$v Bibliography \$v Catalogs** (*H 1361*)

Use under subjects.

**\$v Bibliography \$v Early** (*H 1576*)

Use under subjects for bibliographies issued before 1800.

**\$v Bibliography \$v Exhibitions** (*H 1593*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Bibliography \$x Methodology**

Use under subjects.

**\$v Bibliography \$v Microform catalogs** (*H 1361; H 1965*)

Use under subjects for catalogs that list works stored in microform editions.

See also –**Microform catalogs**

**\$v Bibliography \$v Union lists** (*H 1361*)

Use under subjects for catalogs of materials on those subjects held by two or more libraries.

See also –**Union lists**

**\$v Bibliography of bibliographies** (*H 1325*)

Use under subjects.

**\$v Bio-bibliography** (*H 1328*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual Christian denominations and monastic and religious orders, and under ethnic groups, literatures, and topical headings.

**\$v Bio-bibliography \$v Dictionaries** (*H 1328*)

**\$v Biography** (*H 1330; H 1720; H 1845*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual and groups of animals, and historic events.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$v Biography \$v Dictionaries**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and historic events.

**\$v Biography \$v Dictionaries \$x French, [Italian, etc.]**

**\$x Biography \$x History and criticism**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and historic events.

**\$v Blogs**

Use under names of individual persons, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for blogs by those persons, or about those persons, groups, or topics.

**\$v Book reviews (H 2021)**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for collections of appraisals of books on those places or topics.

See also –**Reviews**

**\$x Buildings**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and exhibitions for works that discuss collectively the buildings of those corporate bodies or exhibitions.

See also –**Buildings, structures, etc.** under names of cities.

**\$v By-laws**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies.

**\$x By-products**

Use under types of industries and processes.

**\$v Calendars**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings for works that list recurring, coming, or past events occurring in those places, associated with those organizations, or relating to those topics, and under names of individual persons for calendars that include information on events associated with the person or quotations from the person.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$x Calibration** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of scientific and technical instruments and equipment.

**\$x Cantons** (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [**topic**]-[**country**] for works discussing collectively the cantons of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Transportation–Switzerland–Cantons**.

**\$v Caricatures and cartoons**

Use under names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for collections or discussions of caricatures or pictorial humor about those subjects.

**\$v Case studies** (*H 1350*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$v Catalogs** (*H 1360; H 1361*)

Use under types of objects, including types of merchandise, art objects, products, publications, collectors' items, technical equipment, etc., for listings of those objects that have been produced, that are available or located at particular places, or that occur on a particular market, often systematically arranged with descriptive details, prices, etc., accompanying each entry. Use **–Catalogs** under the heading **Excavations (Archaeology)** as well as under headings for individual archaeological sites for works listing objects found. Use **–Catalogs** under names of individual corporate bodies and types of organizations for works listing objects, art works, products, etc., produced by, located in, or available from those organizations. Also use **–Catalogs** under names of individual artists, craftspersons, families of artists or craftspersons, and corporate bodies for works listing their art works or crafts which are available or located in particular institutions or places. Also use under persons or families doing business as sellers under their own names.

See also **–Audiocassette catalogs; –Audiotape catalogs; –CD-ROM catalogs; –Compact disc catalogs; –Data tape catalogs; –Discography; –Exhibitions; –Film catalogs; –Microform catalogs; –Video catalogs**

**\$v Catalogs and collections** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1360; H 1427*)

Use under types of natural objects and musical instruments.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### ***FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:***

**\$v CD-ROM catalogs**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Censorship** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual persons and under individual literatures, wars, and topical headings, especially forms of communication.

**\$x Centennial celebrations, etc.**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under historic events.

**\$x Certification** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of products and industries, occupational groups, and types of employees for works on official confirmation that standards have been met.

See also –**Accreditation**; –**Licenses**

**\$x Charitable contributions** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and types of organizations.

**\$v Charts, diagrams, etc.**

Use under topical headings for works consisting of miscellaneous charts or diagrams illustrating those topics.

**\$v Chronology** (*H 1367*)

Use under names of individual persons, uniform titles of sacred works, headings not divided by –**History**, such as art, music, and literature headings, and headings for wars, and under topical headings that are inherently historical.

See also –**History–Chronology**

**\$x Circulation**

Use under types of serial publications.

**\$x Citizen participation** (*H 1942*)

Use under topical headings for works on the participation of citizens in carrying out an activity.

**\$v Classification**

Use under classes of persons and topical headings.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Cleaning** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

**\$v Code numbers**

Use under topical headings for works consisting of lists of code numbers.

**\$v Code words**

Use under topical headings for works consisting of lists of code words.

**\$x Cold weather conditions**

Use under types of installations, construction activities, and technical processes for works on procedures to be followed during cold weather conditions.

**\$x Collectibles** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual persons, corporate bodies, titles of works, and fictitious and legendary characters, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, events, and topical headings, for works on objects depicting or related to those subjects.

**\$x Collection and preservation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of natural objects, including plants, animals, rocks, and minerals, for works on methods of collecting and preserving those objects.

See also **–Antiquities–Collection and preservation** under names of countries, cities, etc., and ethnic groups

**\$x Collectors and collecting** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of objects, excluding natural objects, for works on collectors and methods of assembling and maintaining collections of those objects.

**\$x Colonies** (*H 1149.5*)

Use under headings of the type [**topic**]–[**place**] for works discussing collectively the colonies of a place in relation to the topic, for example, **Education–Great Britain–Colonies**. Also use under names of countries, cities, etc., for works discussing collectively the colonies ruled by the country or city.

**\$v Comic books, strips, etc.**

Use under names of individual persons, uniform titles of sacred works, and under topical headings.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Communication systems**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of industries, institutions, installations, military services, and disciplines.

**\$v Compact disc catalogs (H 1361)**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and topical headings.

**\$x Comparative method**

Use under disciplines for works on methods of comparing data relevant to the field.

**\$v Comparative studies**

Use under uniform titles of sacred works, individual Christian denominations, and religious topics.

**\$x Competitions (May Subd Geog)**

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Composition**

Use under natural substances of unfixed composition, including soils, plants, animals, farm products, etc., for the results of chemical analyses of those substances.

See also –**Analysis**

**\$x Computer-aided design (May Subd Geog)**

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Computer-assisted instruction**

Use under topical headings for works on an automated method of instruction in which a student interacts directly with instructional materials stored in a computer.

**\$v Computer games**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Computer network resources**

Use under subjects for works on computer network resources available for research in various fields.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$x Computer networks** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Computer networks \$x Security measures** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Computer programs** (*H 2070*)

Use under topical headings for works on computer programs, whether or not lists of machine instructions are included.

See also –**Software**

**\$x Computer simulation** (*H 2040*)

Use under topical headings.

**\$v Concordances** (*H 1670*)

Use under names of individual persons, individual works (author-title or title entries), and uniform titles of sacred works, and under individual literatures and literary forms.

**\$v Congresses** (*H 1460*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Congresses \$x Attendance** (*H 1460*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Conservation and restoration** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of art objects, library materials, types of architecture, types of buildings, etc., for works on preserving and restoring those items.

See also –**Buildings, structures, etc.–Conservation and restoration** under names of cities and city sections

**\$x Control** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual and groups of animals, plants and crops, and pests.

**\$v Conversion tables** (*H 2160*)

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Cooling** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.



## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### ***FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:***

**\$x Corrosion** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual metals and metal compounds, individual materials and types of materials, and types of engineering structures, equipment, and vehicles.

**\$x Corrupt practices** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, and under types of organizations, activities, and industries. This subdivision may be further divided by place only under types of organizations, activities, and industries.

**\$x Cost control**

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Cost effectiveness**

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Cost of operation**

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Costs**

Use under topical headings.

**\$v Cross-cultural studies** (*H 1510*)

Use under topical headings for works which report the results of cross-cultural studies on those topics or discuss the methods and techniques of conducting such studies.

**\$x Cult** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual deities, divine persons, saints, and persons worshipped for works on systems of beliefs or rituals associated with them.

**\$x Curricula** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual educational institutions and under types of education and educational institutions for works about courses offered at those institutions or in those fields.

Do not subdivide geographically under names of individual educational institutions.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$x Customer services** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of organizations and industries. This subdivision may be further divided by place only under types of organizations and industries.

**\$x Data processing**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under topical headings.

**\$v Data tape catalogs**

Use under subjects.

**\$v Databases** (*H 1520*)

Use under subjects as a form subdivision for actual databases or as a topical subdivision for works on databases on those subjects.

**\$x Dating**

Use under types of objects for the techniques of fixing the date of their origination.

**\$x Decision making**

Use under topical headings for works on the process of arriving at decisions for action, including attempts to formulate a general theory based on mathematical analysis and psychological experiment.

**\$x Defects** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of materials, equipment, structures, products, etc., in which defects may exist.

**\$x Defects \$x Reporting** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of materials, equipment, structures, products, etc.

**\$x Defense measures** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, utilities, installations, etc., for measures undertaken for their protection during times of conflict.

**\$x Departments** (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [*topic*]-[*country*] for works discussing collectively the departments of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Budget-France- Departments**.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Design** (*H 1532*)

Use under topical headings where –**Design and construction** would not be appropriate.

**\$x Design and construction** (*H 1532*)

Use under individual examinations and types of examinations; also use under types of structures, machines, equipment, etc., for works discussing their engineering and/or construction.

**\$v Designs and plans** (*H 1532*)

Use under architectural headings, including types of buildings and rooms, and under landscape headings, including types of gardens and parks, for works containing architectural drawings.

**\$x Deterioration** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of substances, materials, products, etc.

**\$v Dictionaries** (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

See also –**Encyclopedias**

**\$v Dictionaries \$x French, [Italian, etc.]** (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

**\$v Dictionaries \$x Polyglot** (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

**\$v Dictionaries, Juvenile** (*H 1690*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Digitization** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of library materials.

**\$v Directories** (*H 1558*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies and families, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, Christian denominations, types of organizations, and topical headings for individual directories containing names, addresses, and other identifying data.

See also –**Registers; –Telephone directories**

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$x Discipline**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies, classes of persons, individual religions, and Christian denominations for the enforcement of rules affecting conduct or action.

**\$v Discography** (*H 1361*)

Use under names of individual persons and under topical headings for lists or catalogs of sound recordings.

See also –**Audiotape catalogs**; –**Songs and music**–**Discography**

**\$x Documentation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings for works on the processes by which documents on those topics are made available.

**\$v Drama** (*H 1780*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for plays or musical dramatic works on those subjects.

**\$v Drawings**

Use as a form subdivision under technical topics for collections of drawings, plans, etc., and as a topical subdivision for the technique of making such drawings, unless a separate heading for the technique has been provided.

**\$x Drying** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual materials, products, and objects dried.

**\$x Dust control** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

**\$v Early works to 1800** (*H 1576*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and appropriate topical headings to designate individual works written or issued before 1800.

**\$x Earthquake effects** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, structures, facilities, and equipment.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Econometric models** (*H 2040*)

Use under topical headings for works that employ mathematical or statistical models used to test or measure economic phenomena.

**\$x Economic aspects** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings and individual wars.

See also –**Economic conditions** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons and ethnic groups, including occupational groups, for works discussing the economic history or economic conditions in general of a place, class of persons, or ethnic group.

**\$x Electromechanical analogies** (*H 2040*)

Use under scientific and technical topics.

**\$v Electronic discussion groups**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Electronic information resources**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Electronic publishing** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of published materials and headings for literature on particular topics.

**\$x Employees**

Use under names of individual nongovernmental corporate bodies and under types of industries, services, establishments, and institutions.

See also –**Officials and employees**

**\$v Encyclopedias** (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

**\$v Encyclopedias, Juvenile** (*H 1540*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Endowments**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies and disciplines.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$x Energy conservation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, facilities, etc.

**\$x Energy consumption** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, military services, and topical headings.

**\$x Environmental aspects** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual military services, events, and wars, individual chemicals and groups of chemicals, individual materials and types of materials, and under types of industries, processes, machines, facilities, constructions, and events for environmental issues associated with their operation, creation, use, or planning and execution. Also use under individual diseases for environmental aspects of their causation or development.

See also –**Environmental conditions** under names of countries, cities, etc.

**\$x Equipment and supplies**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of industries, processes, services, activities, institutions, disciplines, animals, plants and crops, vehicles, and wars.

See also –**Instruments**; –**Safety appliances**

**\$x Estimates** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of engineering, technical processes, industries, etc., for estimates of the cost of construction, installation, etc., or the carrying out of a task to completion.

**\$x Evaluation** (*H 1591*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of institutions, products, services, equipment, activities, projects, and programs for works on methods of assessing or appraising those subjects, or for works on both the methods and results of assessing them.

See also –**Testing**

See also –**Rating of** under classes of persons.

**\$x Examinations**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, educational institutions, and military services and under types of educational institutions for works discussing examinations given by those organizations; under classes of persons for works discussing examinations for those groups; and under names of individual persons and titles of works and under topical headings for works discussing examinations given about those persons, titles, or topics.

**\$x Examinations \$v Study guides**

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$v Examinations, questions, etc.**

Use under classes of persons for compilations of questions and answers for examinations for those groups; and under names of individual persons and titles of works and under topical headings for compilations of questions and answers for examinations about those persons, titles, or topics.

See also –**Problems, exercises, etc.**

**\$v Excerpts**

Use under motion picture forms and genres and under forms and types of musical compositions.

**\$v Exhibitions** (*H 1593*)

Use under subjects.

See also –**Bibliography–Exhibitions**

**\$x Experiments**

Use under scientific and technical topics for discussions about experiments and instructions for carrying them out.

**\$x Expertising** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under headings for art forms and under types of art objects, types of architecture, and types of buildings.

**\$v Facsimiles** (*H 1595*)

Use under headings or subdivisions designating types of printed or written materials, documents, etc.

See also –**Manuscripts–Facsimiles; –Maps–Facsimiles**

**\$v Fiction** (*H 1720; H 1790*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for collections of stories or novels on those topics. Also use under names of individual persons and historic events for individual works of biographical or historical fiction, and under animals for individual stories about animals.

**\$x Fieldwork** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1645*)

Use under disciplines for discussions of the techniques of carrying out work in the field to gain practical experience through firsthand observation and to collect data.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$v Film catalogs** (*H 1361*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Finance** (*H 1624*)

Use under names of individual nongovernmental corporate bodies and under types of industries, corporate bodies, services, technical operations, etc., for works on the raising and expenditure of funds. Use under names of individual government bodies only for works on their management of nonappropriated funds. Use under ethnic groups for the financial affairs of the group as a whole.

See also –**Appropriations and expenditures** under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual government agencies.

See also –**Finance, Personal** under names of individual persons and under classes of persons and ethnic groups.

**\$x Fires and fire prevention** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of institutions, buildings, industries, and vehicles.

**\$v Folklore** (*H 1627; H 1720*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, uniform titles of sacred works, and topical headings for works discussing those topics as themes in folklore and for collections of folklore texts on those subjects.

**\$x Food service** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual legislative bodies and types of institutions, organized activities, etc., for provisions for meals and food in those enterprises. Do not subdivide geographically under legislative bodies.

**\$x Forecasting** (*H 1628*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

**\$z Foreign countries** (*H 1919.5*)

Use under ethnic groups, individual languages, individual literatures, military services, and types of publications qualified by language or nationality.



## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Foreign influences** (*H 1675*)

Use under headings for civilizations of places, or particular aspects of those civilizations, including art forms, literary forms, philosophies, intellectual life, etc., under ethnic groups, and under disciplines when further subdivided by place for works discussing general outside cultural influences on those civilizations, groups, or disciplines.

**\$x Forgeries** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual persons and under types of art objects, documents, etc.

**\$v Forms**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings for works consisting of, or containing, substantial numbers of blank forms.

**\$v Formulae, receipts, prescriptions**

Use under branches and systems of medicine.

See also –**Medicine–Formulae, receipts, prescriptions** under ethnic groups.

**\$x Fuel systems**

Use under types of equipment and vehicles.

**\$x Fume control** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

**\$x Geographic information systems** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Government policy** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1642*)

Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings not inherently governmental.

See also headings of the type **[topic] and state** and **[topic] policy**.

**\$x Grading** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual animals and groups of animals, individual plants and groups of plants, and individual commodities.

**\$x Graphic methods**

Use under disciplines, types of technical processes, scientific phenomena, etc., for the technique of solving problems by means of graphs.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$v Guidebooks** (*H 1645*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies and parks, etc., and certain topical headings.

See also –**Tours** under names of countries, cities, etc.

**\$v Handbooks, manuals, etc.** (*H 1646*)

Use under subjects.

See also –**Amateurs' manuals**; –**Laboratory manuals**; –**Observers' manuals**

**\$x Health aspects** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Heating and ventilation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, vehicles, and other constructions.

**\$x Heating and ventilation \$x Control** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, vehicles, and other constructions.

**\$x Heraldry**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, types of industries, and topical headings for the devising, granting, and use of armorial insignia.

**\$x Historiography**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works and treaties, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings.

**\$x History** (*H 1647; H 1845*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$x History \$y To 1500** (*H 1647*)

Use under topical headings.

**\$x History \$y 16th century** (*H 1647*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x History \$y 17th century (H 1647)**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$x History \$y 18th century (H 1647)**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$x History \$y 19th century (H 1647)**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$x History \$y 20th century (H 1647)**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$x History \$y 21st century (H 1647)**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$x History \$v Chronology (H 1367)**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, and topical headings not inherently historical.

See also –**Chronology**

**\$x History \$x Philosophy**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

**\$x History \$v Sources (H 1647; H 2080)**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings not inherently historical for collections or discussions of source materials of all types, such as legal documents, letters, diaries, family papers, visual and moving image materials, assembled at a later time to serve as source materials for use by students, scholars, etc., in their research on the subject.

See also –**Sources**

**\$x History and criticism (H 1647)**

Use under literary, music, film, television, and video recording form headings.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$x History of doctrines**

Use under religious topics.

**\$x History of doctrines \$y Early church, ca. 30-600**

Use under religious topics.

**\$x History of doctrines \$y Middle Ages, 600-1500**

Use under religious topics.

**\$x History of doctrines \$y 16th century**

Use under religious topics.

**\$x History of doctrines \$y 17th century**

Use under religious topics.

**\$x History of doctrines \$y 18th century**

Use under religious topics.

**\$x History of doctrines \$y 19th century**

Use under religious topics.

**\$x History of doctrines \$y 20th century**

Use under religious topics.

**\$x History of doctrines \$y 21st century**

Use under religious topics.

**\$x Hot weather conditions** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings for works on procedures to be followed during hot weather conditions.

See also –**Tropical conditions**

**\$y Humor**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under topical headings.

**\$x Hurricane effects** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, structures, facilities, and equipment.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

#### **\$x Identification**

Use under classes of persons and topical headings. Also use under groups of animals and plants and types of objects as a topical or form subdivision for works presenting the characteristics of a group for the purpose of determining the names of its members.

#### **\$v Illustrations** (*H 1659*)

Use under names of individual persons, individual works (author-title or title entries), uniform titles of sacred works, and under individual literatures, literary forms, and types of published materials.

#### **\$v In art** (*H 362; H 910; H 1250; H 1935*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and individual Christian denominations, and under uniform titles, for their representation as physical objects in artistic works. Use as a form subdivision for works consisting of reproductions of artistic works that depict the place, body, etc. Use as a topical subdivision for works that discuss the place, body, etc., as a theme in art.

#### **\$v Indexes** (*H 1670*)

Use under subjects.

See also –**Concordances**

#### **\$x Industrial applications** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under scientific topics, individual chemicals, and individual plants and groups of plants.

#### **\$x Influence** (*H 1675*)

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, uniform titles of sacred works, and under forms and movements in the visual arts, types of organizations, religions, and individual wars for works discussing their influence.

#### **\$x Information resources**

Use under subjects.

See also –**Electronic information resources**

#### **\$x Information resources management** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and types of industries and organizations.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$x Information services** (*H 1675.5*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, corporate bodies, and military services, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$x Information technology** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under disciplines, types of industries, services, and organizations.

**\$x Insignia**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services and under types of corporate bodies.

**\$x Inspection** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1676.5*)

Use under names of individual military services, and under types of merchandise, products, equipment, engineering structures, and buildings, and individual and groups of animals and plants.

**\$x Installation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of equipment.

**\$x Instruments**

Use under scientific and technical disciplines for discussions of the instruments employed in those fields.

**\$v Interactive multimedia**

Use under subjects.

**\$x International cooperation**

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Internet marketing** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of commodities, products, and services.

**\$x Interpretation**

Use under individual tests and types of tests.

**\$v Inventories**

Use under types of industries, institutions, and topical headings for lists or discussions of raw materials, supplies, work in process, finished goods, etc., on hand at a particular time..

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### ***FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:***

**\$x Inventory control** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services and under types of industries, organizations, and facilities. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under types of industries, organizations, and facilities.

**\$v Job descriptions** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services, and under occupational groups. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under occupational groups.

**\$v Juvenile drama** (*H 1690*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$v Juvenile fiction** (*H 1690*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$v Juvenile films** (*H 1690*)

Use under subjects.

**\$v Juvenile humor** (*H 1690*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$v Juvenile literature** (*H 1690*)

Use under subjects.

**\$v Juvenile poetry** (*H 1690*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$v Juvenile software** (*H 2070*)

Use under topical headings for actual software items, that is, machine-readable editions.

**\$v Juvenile sound recordings** (*H 1690*)

Use under subjects.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$x Koranic teaching**

Use under Islamic topics for works on the theological and/or ethical teachings of the Koran on that topic, for example, **Islamic education–Koranic teaching; War–Religious aspects–Islam–Koranic teaching.**

**\$x Labeling** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of products.

**\$x Labor productivity** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, occupations, and processes.

**\$v Laboratory manuals** (*H 1646*)

Use under scientific and technical topics for workbooks containing concise background information and directions for performing work, including experiments, in the laboratory.

**\$x Landscape architecture** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, institutions, and facilities.

**\$x Language**

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, individual works entered under title, and under classes of persons, disciplines, types of newspapers, and individual wars.

See also **–Languages** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under ethnic groups.

See also **–Slang** under individual languages and groups of languages and under topical headings.

**\$v Legends** (*H 1627; H 1795*)

Use under names of individual persons and legendary characters and uniform titles of sacred works, and under religious topics for collected or individual literary versions of legendary tales about those persons, characters, or topics.

See also **–Romances**

**\$x Library resources**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for works describing the resources and special collections available on those subjects.



## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Licenses** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees, under types of industries, facilities, and institutions, and under individual land vehicles.

See also –**Accreditation**; –**Certification**

**\$x Licenses \$x Fees** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees, under types of industries, facilities, and institutions, and under individual land vehicles.

**\$x Lighting** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of vehicles, structures, buildings, rooms, installations, etc.

**\$x Linear programming**

Use under topical headings.

**\$v Literary collections**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for collections including several literary forms.

**\$x Liturgy**

Use under individual Jewish and Christian sects and rites; under names of individual Christian monastic and religious orders; and under individual Jewish and Christian ceremonies, rituals, holidays, etc.

**\$x Liturgy \$v Texts** (*H 2190*)

**\$x Location** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, business entities, government agencies, and facilities, and under individual plants and groups of plants.

**\$v Longitudinal studies** (*H 1848*)

Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$x Maintenance and repair**

Use under types of objects, including machinery, vehicles, structures, etc., requiring maintenance and repair.

See also –**Repairing**

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

#### **\$x Management**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, including government agencies, galleries, museums, parks, etc., and under types of industries, industrial plants and processes, special activities, resources, etc.

See also –**Administration**

#### **\$x Manuscripts** (*H 1855*)

Use under names of individual persons and families, individual works entered under title, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, groups of authors, literatures, and topical headings.

#### **\$x Manuscripts \$v Catalogs** (*H 1855*)

#### **\$v Manuscripts \$v Facsimiles** (*H 1595; H 1855*)

Use under names of individual composers and literary authors and under individual works entered under title.

#### **\$x Manuscripts \$v Indexes**

#### **\$x Manuscripts \$v Microform catalogs** (*H 1361*)

#### **\$v Maps** (*H 1865*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings for individual maps or collections of maps.

See also –**Aerial views** under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual educational institutions.

#### **\$x Maps \$v Bibliography**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings.

#### **\$v Maps \$v Early works to 1800** (*H 1576*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

#### **\$v Maps \$v Facsimiles** (*H 1595*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### ***FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:***

**\$x Maps \$x Symbols**

Use under topical headings.

**\$v Maps, Comparative**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

**\$v Maps, Manuscript**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

**\$v Maps, Mental**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

**\$v Maps, Outline and base**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

**\$v Maps, Physical**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

**\$v Maps, Pictorial**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

**\$v Maps, Topographic**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

**\$v Maps, Tourist**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

**\$v Maps for children**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., under individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings.

**\$v Maps for people with visual disabilities**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

**\$v Maps for the blind**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$x Marketing** (*H 1870*)

Use under types of commodities, products, services, and institutions providing products or services.

**\$x Materials** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under scientific and technical disciplines and under types of equipment and construction.

**\$x Mathematical models** (*H 2040*)

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Mathematics**

Use under topical headings for works on the mathematics employed in those fields.

**\$x Measurement**

Use under scientific and technical topics for works on the technique of making measurements.

**\$x Medals** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies other than military services, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings, for works on commemorative or honorary medals issued or awarded in relation to the subject. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings. Use –**Medals, badges, decorations, etc.** under military services.

**\$x Medical examinations** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual military services and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for which medical examinations are needed, such as insurance.

**\$v Meditations**

Use under names of individual persons, uniform titles of sacred works, and under religious topics for works containing collections of thoughts or reflections on the spiritual significance of the person or topic.

**\$x Membership**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and types of corporate bodies for works on the conditions of belonging to those organizations.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

#### **\$x Methodology**

Use under disciplines and other topical headings for works on both the theory and practice of procedures to be followed.

See also –**Technique**

#### **\$v Microform catalogs** (*H 1361; H 1965*)

Use under names of individual institutions and collections for catalogs that list works stored in those institutions or collections in microform editions.

See also –**Archives–Microform catalogs; –Bibliography–Microform catalogs**

#### **\$v Miscellanea** (*H 1910*)

Use under subjects.

#### **\$x Models** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2040*)

Use under types of objects and organs and regions of the body for works on physical or working models of those objects or body parts.

#### **\$x Moisture** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of farm produce, objects, materials, technical equipment, etc., for works on their moisture content.

#### **\$x Moral and ethical aspects** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1998*)

Use under non-religious or non-ethical topics for works that discuss moral and/or ethical questions regarding the topic.

See also –**Professional ethics** under occupational groups and types of employees.

#### **\$x Museums** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1916*)

Use under names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for which phrase headings for the type of museum have not been established. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under headings for names of individual persons and families, and ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings.

#### **\$x Mythology** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1998*)

Use under topical headings.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$x Name** (*H 1919*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, deities, Christian denominations, and corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups and individual wars, events, etc., for works on the name's origin, history, spelling, validity, etc.

**\$x Names** (*H 1919*)

Use under types of objects, animals, events, organizations, and educational institutions for the rules, customs, etc., in the naming of those items.

**\$v Newspapers** (*H 1920*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Noise**

Use under topical headings.

**\$v Nomenclature**

Use under scientific and technical disciplines and types of substances, plants, and animals for systematically derived lists of names or designations that have been formally adopted or sanctioned, or for discussions of the principles involved in the creation and application of such names.

**\$v Nomograms**

Use under topical headings.

**\$v Notation**

Use under scientific and technical topics for works containing the symbols, formulae, or signs employed in the field.

**\$v Observations**

Use under scientific topics for works consisting of numerical data obtained by the observation of natural phenomena or for discussions on the processing and use of those data.

**\$v Observers' manuals** (*H 1646*)

Use under scientific topics for instruction books on making observations of natural phenomena.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### ***FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:***

**\$x Officials and employees**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual international and governmental agencies, and under types of government agencies. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only when used under names of countries, cities, etc.

See also –**Employees**

**\$x On postage stamps (H 1945)**

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, under titles of works and under names of countries, cities, etc., for works on the portrayal of those entities on postage stamps.

**\$v Online chat groups**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Orbit**

Use under names of individual artificial satellites.

**\$v Outlines, syllabi, etc.**

Use under names of individual persons, uniform titles of sacred works, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for brief statements of the principal elements of a subject to be studied, usually arranged by headings and subheadings.

**\$x Packaging (May Subd Geog)**

Use under types of products and merchandise for the techniques of wrapping, sealing, and labeling those items for marketing.

**\$x Packing (May Subd Geog)**

Use under types of products and commodities for the techniques of preparing those items for storage or shipment.

**\$v Pamphlets**

Use under 16th, 17th, and 18th century period subdivisions of European and American history and under individual wars, for short, separately published, usually polemical, essays or treatises regarding controversial issues of contemporary interest, especially political or religious matters.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$v Papal documents**

Use under topical headings for collections of documents and other papal pronouncements on the topic.

**\$v Parodies, imitations, etc.**

Use under names of individual persons, individual works entered under title, and motion picture, television, and video forms and genres.

**\$v Passenger lists**

Use under names of individual ships.

**\$v Patents**

Use under disciplines and under types of articles and processes patented.

**\$v Periodicals (H 1927)**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Periodicals \$v Abbreviations of titles**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Periodicals \$v Bibliography**

Use under subjects for lists of serials or periodicals on a subject.

**\$x Periodicals \$v Bibliography \$v Catalogs (H 1361)**

Use under subjects for lists of serials or periodicals held by one organization or library, assembled as a private collection, or issued by an individual publisher.

**\$x Periodicals \$v Bibliography \$v Union lists (H 1361)**

Use under subjects for catalogs of serials or periodicals on those subjects held by two or more libraries.

**\$x Periodicals \$v Indexes (H 1670)**

Use under subjects.

**\$v Personal narratives (H 1928)**

Use under names of events and wars.

**\$x Personal narratives \$x History and criticism**



## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Personnel management**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of industries and organizations.

**\$x Philosophy (H 1929)**

Use under names of individual persons who are not philosophers, and under groups of literary authors, uniform titles of sacred works, and topical headings.

**\$v Photographs (H 1935)**

Use under subjects for works that consist of actual photographs, that is, photographic prints or digital photographs, rather than reproductions of photographs.

**\$v Photographs from space (1210.5)**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings for collections of photographs taken from outer space. Do not use for cartographic materials.

**\$x Physiological aspects**

Use under types of activities and mental conditions for works on the relationship between an individual's activity, mental state, etc., and his physiology.

See also –**Physiology** under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual and groups of animals and plants, and individual organs and regions of the body.

**\$x Physiological effect (May Subd Geog)**

Use under individual chemicals, materials, individual plants and groups of plants, and environmental phenomena or conditions for works on their effect on the functions of living organisms.

**\$v Pictorial works (H 1935)**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings. Also use under literary works entered under author for works consisting of pictures pertaining to the work as a physical object or, in the case of dramatic works, to productions of the work.

See also –**Portraits** under names of individual persons who lived after 1400, individual families, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and individual wars.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

#### **\$x Planning**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of activities, facilities, industries, services, undertakings, etc., for works that describe or discuss the planning process.

#### **\$v Poetry** (*H 1800*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for collections of poetry and individual poems on those subjects.

#### **\$x Political activity** (*H 1942*)

Use under names of individual persons, families, corporate bodies, and military services, and under classes of persons, individual Christian denominations, and types of corporate bodies for works on the political participation of those persons or organizations.

See also –**Politics and government** under ethnic groups

See also –**Political and social views** under individual persons and groups of literary authors.

#### **\$x Political aspects** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1942*)

Use under individual religious sects and denominations and topical headings for works on the political dimensions or implications of nonpolitical topics.

See also –**Politics and government** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under ethnic groups.

#### **\$v Popular works** (*H 1943.5*)

Use under scientific, technical, and legal headings, etc., for works written for the layperson; and under medical disciplines, individual diseases, and under headings of the type [*part of the body*]–**Diseases** for materials written for the layperson.

#### **\$v Posters** (*H 1945.5*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual persons and corporate bodies, classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for individual posters and collections and/or discussions of posters about those subjects.

#### **\$x Power supply** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, installations, equipment, industries, etc.

#### **\$x Practice** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of professions.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

#### **\$v Prayers and devotions**

Use under names of individual religious and monastic orders and under individual religions, Christian denominations, classes of persons and ethnic groups for whose use the prayers are intended; under names of individual saints, deities, etc., to whom the devotions are directed; and under topical headings for prayers and devotions on those topics.

#### **\$x Prayers and devotions \$x History and criticism**

#### **\$x Preservation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual organs, and types of perishable products, including food, drugs, textiles, etc.

#### **\$x Press coverage** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc, individual corporate bodies, individual events, and topical headings.

#### **\$x Prevention**

Use under individual or types of diseases and medical conditions, and under situations to be avoided.

#### **\$x Prices** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of products, objects, etc., and under industries where one general heading for the products of that industry is lacking.

#### **\$x Prices \$x Government policy** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of products, objects, etc., and under industries where one general heading for the products of that industry is lacking.

#### **\$x Private collections** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1427*)

Use under types of objects, including art and antiquities and excluding natural objects and musical instruments, for works on privately owned collections of those objects.

#### **\$x Privileges and immunities**

Use under names of individual international agencies and legislative bodies and under types of organizations and educational institutions.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$v Problems, exercises, etc.**

Use under topical headings for compilations of practice problems or exercises pertinent to the study of the topic.

See also –**Examinations, questions, etc.**

**\$x Production and direction** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under forms and types of musical compositions, under individual art forms performed on stage or screen, under motion picture forms and genres, and under types of programming for the broadcast media.

**\$x Production control** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

**\$x Production standards** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries and processes.

**\$v Programmed instruction**

Use under topical headings for works discussing presequenced instruction in which the learner is able to govern the pacing of the process, sometimes with a teaching machine, or for programmed texts on those topics.

**\$x Programming** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual and types of computers, microprocessors, and programmable calculators.

**\$x Prophecies**

Use under names of individual persons and deities, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and individual wars.

See also –**History–Prophecies** under names of countries, cities, etc.

**\$x Protection** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of equipment, structures, individual and groups of plants and crops, organs and regions of the body, and under classes of persons for works on preserving these items or persons from physical damage or harm.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Provinces** (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [**topic**]-[**country**] for works discussing collectively the provinces of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Economic forecasting–Canada–Provinces**.

**\$x Psychological aspects**

Use under topical headings other than religious topics for works on the influence of conditions, activities, objects, etc., on the mental condition or personality of individuals.

**\$x Psychology**

Use under uniform titles of sacred works, religions, and religious topics for the psychological aspects of those works or topics. Use under names of individual persons for discussions or interpretations of the person's psychological traits, personality, character, etc. Also use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and individual and groups of animals for the mental processes or characteristics of those persons or animals.

**\$x Public opinion** (*H 1955*)

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for works on public opinion on those persons or topics.

**\$x Public relations** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, military services, and topical headings.

**\$x Publishing** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, individual Christian denominations, and types of corporate bodies, and under types of published materials and headings for literature on particular topics.

See also –**Publication and distribution** under uniform titles of sacred works.

**\$x Purchasing** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual animals and groups of animals and under types of products and services.

**\$x Quality control**

Use under types of industries, industrial plants, and processes.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$v Quotations, maxims, etc.** (*H 1969*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

See also –**Quotations** under names of individual persons and families, uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons and ethnic groups.

**\$x Rates** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of services, utilities, transportation systems, etc., for prices charged for services provided or items sold according to a specific ratio, scale, or standard.

**\$v Records and correspondence**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and types of industries, organizations, etc.

**\$x Recreational use** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of bodies of water, types of land, types of geographic features, and types of buildings with other functions.

**\$x Reference books** (*H 1980*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Regional disparities**

Use under topical headings.

See also –**Economic conditions**–**Regional disparities** under names of countries, etc.

**\$x Regions** (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [*topic*]–[*country*] for works discussing collectively the regions of a country in relation to a topic, for example, **Law–Italy–Regions**. Use only under countries whose legally designated first order divisions are called regions.

**\$v Registers** (*H 1558*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and families, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for lists of names of persons, organizations, or objects, etc., without addresses or other identifying data.

See also –**Directories**

**\$x Reliability**

Use under types of equipment, machinery, technical systems, industrial plants, etc.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Remodeling** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings and rooms.

**\$x Remodeling for other use** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings and structures.

**\$x Remote sensing**

Use under topical headings.

**\$v Remote-sensing maps**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings.

**\$x Repairing** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of objects not requiring maintenance.

See also –**Maintenance and repair**

**\$x Republics** (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [**topic**]–[**country**] for works discussing collectively the republics of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Civil law–Soviet Union–Republics**.

**\$x Research** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2020*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, and classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

**\$x Research grants** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under topical headings. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under topical headings.

**\$v Reviews** (*H 2021*)

Use under the heading **Books** and headings for types of books for collections of descriptive and evaluative accounts of books on many subjects. Use under headings for nonbook materials for collections of descriptive and evaluative accounts of those materials. Also use under headings for mass media and the performing arts for collections of critical writings about programs, performances, etc.

**\$x Risk assessment** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings with which physical risk is associated.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$v Romances** (*H 1795*)

Use under names of individual persons and legendary characters for texts of medieval (that is, pre-1501) European tales based chiefly on legends of chivalric love and adventure in which those persons or characters are the dominant character.

See also –**Legends**

**\$v Rules**

Use under names of individual religious and monastic orders, contests, and sports events and under types of games and activities.

**\$v Rules and practice**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and types of corporate bodies.

See also –**Regulations** under names of individual educational institutions and military services.

**\$x Safety appliances** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of machines, vehicles, industrial plants, occupations, etc.

**\$x Safety measures**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, military services, and topical headings.

**\$x Safety regulations** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Sanitation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, types of industries, and topical headings. Do not subdivide geographically under corporate bodies.

**\$x Scholarships, fellowships, etc.** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and fields of study.

**\$x Scientific applications** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of technical devices or processes used to further scientific advancement.



## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Security measures** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under individual computers, networks, and systems, and under types of buildings, installations, and industries. This subdivision may be further subdivided by place only under individual computers, networks, and systems, and under types of buildings, installations, and industries.

See also –**Computer networks**–**Security measures**.

**\$v Sermons** (*H 2032*)

Use under names of individual persons and under sects of individual religions, Christian denominations, types of educational institutions, uniform titles of sacred works, individual wars, and topical headings.

**\$x Sermons** **\$x History and criticism** (*H 2032*)

**\$x Sex differences** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Signers**

Use under uniform titles of historic documents.

**\$x Simulation games**

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Simulation methods** (*H 2040*)

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Slang**

Use under individual languages and groups of languages, and under topical headings.

**\$v Slides**

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual persons and under topical headings.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$x Social aspects** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings for works that discuss the effect of the item, activity, discipline, etc., and society on each other.

See also –**Social conditions** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons and ethnic groups for works on the social history or sociology of the place or group.

See also –**Social life and customs** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons and ethnic groups.

**\$x Societies, etc.** (*H 2060*)

Use under names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, uniform titles of sacred works, and topical headings for works discussing two or more societies or institutions related to those subjects.

See also –**Societies and clubs** under age and sex groups.

**\$x Sociological aspects** (*H 2055*)

Use under types of institutions for works discussing the impact of the inherent nature of the institution in question on group interaction within the institution and vice versa.

**\$v Software** (*H 2070*)

Use under topical headings as a form subdivision for actual computer programs that are tools to perform tasks, for example, systems software, utilities, or applications programs. Do not use for computer files or electronic resources that are *about* a given topic, or to indicate only that the item is machine-readable.

See also –**Computer games**; –**Computer programs**; –**Databases**.

**\$v Songs and music** (*H 2075*)

Use under names of individual persons and corporate bodies, and under ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings.

See also –**Music** under ethnic groups.

**\$x Songs and music** **\$v Discography**

**\$x Songs and music** **\$x History and criticism** (*H 2075*)

**\$v Songs and music** **\$v Texts** (*H 2190*)

**\$x Soundproofing** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, structures, facilities, and equipment.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$v Sources** (*H 1647; H 2080*)

Use under individual works (author-title or title entries), historical topics, and headings for systems of law, for collections or discussions of source materials of all types compiled for scholars. Also use under names of individual persons for collections of materials that served as the person's sources of ideas or inspiration for his or her endeavors or creative works, and for discussions of those source materials. Also use under types of literatures for works about sources of ideas or inspiration for those literary works.

See also –**History–Sources**

**\$v Specifications** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2083*)

Use under types of engineering, construction, industries, products, and merchandise.

**\$v Specimens**

Use under types of publications, printed matter, etc., as a form subdivision for actual specimens of the material. Also use under individual typefaces or groups of typefaces as a form subdivision for works consisting primarily or entirely of samples of printed matter using those typefaces and intended to illustrate their appearance.

**\$x Spectra**

Use under individual chemicals, materials, elementary particles, and celestial bodies.

**\$v Speeches in Congress**

Use under topical headings for single speeches or compilations of speeches on those topics.

**\$x Stability**

Use under types of equipment, individual chemicals and groups of chemicals, and individual land vehicles and types of land vehicles.

**\$x Standards** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings for descriptions of the example or model set up and established by authority as the measure of quantity, quality, value, extent, weight, etc., to be followed.

See also –**Production standards**

**\$x State supervision** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$x States** (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [*topic*]-[*country*] for works discussing collectively the states of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Income tax–United States– States**.

**\$x Statistical methods** (*H 2095*)

Use under topical headings for discussions of the methods of solving problems on those topics through the use of statistics.

**\$x Statistical services** (*H 2095*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings for works on services that collect numerical data located in those places or about those topics.

**\$v Statistics** (*H 2095*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for works consisting of or discussing statistics about those subjects.

See also –**Statistics, Medical** under names of countries, cities, etc.

See also –**Statistics, Vital** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under ethnic groups for compilations of birth, marriage, and death statistics.

**\$x Storage** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of commodities, foods, materials, industrial products, etc., for their safe-keeping in a warehouse or other depository.

**\$x Study and teaching** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects for works on methods of study and teaching on those subjects.

See also –**Education** under names of individual religious and monastic orders, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and Christian denominations.

See also –**Instruction and study** under music headings.

See also –**Training of** under occupational groups and types of employees.

**\$x Study and teaching \$x Activity programs** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching \$x Audio-visual aids** (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects for works on the use of audiovisual aids in the learning and teaching of those subjects.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Study and teaching \$x Simulation methods (H 2110)**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching \$x Supervision (May Subd Geog)**

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Study and teaching (Continuing education) (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Continuing education) \$x Audio-visual aids**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) \$x Activity programs (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) \$x Audio-visual aids (H 2110)**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Elementary) (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Elementary) \$x Activity programs (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Elementary) \$x Audio-visual aids (H 2110)**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Elementary) \$x Simulation methods (H 2110)**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Graduate) (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)**

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Higher) (May Subd Geog) (H 2110)**

Use under subjects.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$x Study and teaching (Higher) \$x Activity programs** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)  
Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Higher) \$x Audio-visual aids** (*H 2110*)  
Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Higher) \$x Simulation methods** (*H 2110*)  
Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Internship)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)  
Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Middle school)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)  
Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Middle school) \$x Activity programs** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)  
Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Middle school) \$x Audio-visual aids** (*H 2110*)  
Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Preschool)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)  
Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Preschool) \$x Activity programs** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)  
Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Preschool) \$x Audio-visual aids** (*H 2110*)  
Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Primary)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)  
Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Primary) \$x Activity programs** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)  
Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Primary) \$x Audio-visual aids** (*H 2110*)  
Use under subjects.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Study and teaching (Residency)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Study and teaching (Secondary)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Secondary) \$x Activity programs** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Secondary) \$x Audio-visual aids** (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Study and teaching (Secondary) \$x Simulation methods** (*H 2110*)

Use under subjects.

**\$v Study guides**

Use under individual examinations and types of examinations and tests for guides for preparation for those examinations.

**\$v Tables** (*H 2160*)

Use under topical headings.

**\$v Tables of contents**

Use under individual works (author-title or title entries) and types of publications.

**\$x Taxation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings for works on the taxes levied on income-producing activities or articles of value; and under classes of persons and ethnic groups for taxes levied on those groups.

**\$x Taxation \$x Law and legislation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings, classes of persons, and ethnic groups.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

#### **\$x Technique**

Use under disciplines, especially those involving laboratory routines, for nontheoretical works describing steps to be followed in performing required tasks. Use under names of individual literary authors and under literary form headings for works on writing technique. Also use under individual art forms and headings for national or ethnic art for works on artistic technique.

See also –**Methodology**

#### **\$x Technological innovations** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings for works on fundamental technological improvements or changes in materials, production methods, processes, organization, or management which increase efficiency or production.

#### **\$v Telephone directories** (*H 1558*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual corporate bodies, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and types of organizations and industries.

#### **\$v Terminology** (*H 2184*)

Use under uniform titles of sacred works, and under classes of persons, individual Christian denominations, and topical headings for works that list or discuss words and expressions found in those works or used in those fields.

See also –**Terms and phrases** under individual languages and groups of languages.

#### **\$x Terminology \$x Pronunciation**

Use under individual sacred works and topical headings.

#### **\$x Territories and possessions**

Use under headings of the type [*topic*]–[*country*] for works discussing collectively the territories and territorial possessions of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Postmarks–United States–Territories and possessions**. Also use under names of regions and countries for works discussing collectively the territorial possessions of the region or country.



## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Testing** (*H 2186*)

Use under topical headings for works on the construction, application, and results of testing pertaining to those topics. Also use under **Drugs** and individual drugs for works on testing their effectiveness and/or safety, and under types of materials, instruments, equipment, products, chemicals, animals, etc., for works on testing of those items and/or the results of testing.

See also **–Ability testing; –Evaluation**

**\$v Textbooks** (*H 1690; H 2187*)

Use under topical headings for textbooks on those topics.

**\$v Texts** (*H 2190*)

Use under individual lesser-known languages, dialects, early periods of languages, liturgy headings, and headings for vocal music for individual texts or collections of texts.

See also **–Liturgy–Texts; –Songs and music–Texts**

**\$x Themes, motives**

Use under names of individual persons and individual literary and art forms.

**\$x Therapeutic use** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings for works on their use in treating disease.

**\$x Tombs** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under names of individual families, royal houses, dynasties, etc., and under classes of persons.

See also **–Tomb** under names of individual persons.

**\$x Toxicology** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual chemicals and other substances for works on their poisonous effects on human beings or animals.

**\$v Trademarks**

Use under individual industries and under products and articles that may be trademarked.

**\$x Translating** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2219*)

Use under uniform titles of sacred works, and under individual languages and groups of languages and topical headings.

## H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

### *FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:*

**\$v Translations** (*H 2220*)

Use under names of individual literary authors, individual literary works entered under title, individual literatures, types of publications, and topical headings, for collections of translated works.

**\$v Translations into [name of language]** (*H 2220*)

**\$x Transportation** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2225*)

Use under names of individual military services, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, types of objects, merchandise, animals, and individual wars for works on transportation of or applied to those topics. This heading may be further subdivided by place only when used under classes of persons, ethnic groups, types of objects, merchandise, animals, and individual wars.

**\$x Tropical conditions**

Use under topical headings for works on methods or procedures employed when working in a tropical climate.

See also –**Hot weather conditions**

**\$v Union lists** (*H 1361*)

Use under types of printed or nonbook materials for catalogs of those materials held by two or more libraries.

See also –**Bibliography–Union lists**

**\$x Union territories** (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [*topic*]–**India** for works discussing collectively the union territories of India in relation to the topic, e.g. **Land use–India–Union territories**.

**\$v Use studies**

Use under types of information resources, information services, library resources, and publications.

**\$x Validity** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under individual tests and types of tests.

**\$x Valuation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of property, businesses, structures, etc., for works on the values set upon those topics or their estimated or determined market value.

## Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

### **FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:**

**\$x Vibration** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of equipment, structures, and vehicles.

**\$v Video catalogs** (*H 1361*)

Use under subjects.

**\$x Vocational guidance** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2232*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services, and under occupations, fields of endeavor, and types of industries, trades, etc., for works describing careers in those organizations or fields and/or offering advice on how to prepare for, enter, and succeed in those careers. Use under classes of persons or occupational groups only if the heading for the corresponding field or activity does not exist or cannot be established.

**\$x Voivodeships** (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [*topic*]-**Poland** for works discussing collectively the voivodeships of Poland in relation to the topic.

**\$x Waste disposal** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, industrial processes, facilities, and institutions.

**\$x Waste minimization** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, industrial processes, facilities, and institutions.

**\$x Water-supply**

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Web-based instruction** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

**\$x Weight**

Use under types of objects, substances, individual animals and groups of animals, and organs and regions of the body for works on the techniques of making weight measurements of those items, or for the results of such measurements.

**\$x Weights and measures**

Use under types of commodities and merchandise for systems of weights and measures established for those items.



## Free-Floating Subdivisions: Classes of Persons H 1100

\$v **Literary collections**

\$x **Long-term care** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Longitudinal studies** (*H 1848*)

\$x **Manuscripts**

\$x **Medals** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medical care** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medical examinations** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Mental health** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1890*)

\$x **Mental health services** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1890*)

\$x **Monuments** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Mortality** (*May Subd Geog*)

Do not use under headings for persons with specific diseases. Use [*disease*]-**Mortality** instead (cf. H 1150).

\$x **Museums** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1916*)

*Music*, see –**Songs and music**

\$x **Nursing home care** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Nutrition** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Nutrition** \$x **Requirements** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Obituaries**

\$v **Outlines, syllabi, etc.**

*Outside employment*, see –**Supplementary employment**

\$x **Pastoral counseling of** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Pensions** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Pensions** \$x **Cost-of-living adjustments** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Pensions** \$x **Effect of inflation on** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1580*)

\$x **Pensions** \$x **Unclaimed benefits** (*May Subd Geog*)

*Personal finance*, see –**Finance, Personal**

\$x **Physiology** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Pictorial works** (*H 1935*)

*Places frequented*, see –**Homes and haunts**

\$v **Poetry** (*H 1800*)

\$x **Political activity** (*H 1942*)

\$v **Portraits** (*H 1935*)

\$v **Posters** (*H 1945.5*)

\$v **Prayers and devotions**

\$x **Prayers and devotions** \$x **History and criticism**

\$x **Press coverage** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Professional ethics** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1949*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Professional relationships** (*May Subd Geog*)

## H 1100 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Classes of Persons

\$x **Promotions** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Prophecies**

\$x **Protection** (*May Subd Geog*)

*Psychiatric care*, see –**Mental health services**

\$x **Psychological testing** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 2186)

\$x **Psychology**

Do not use under classes of afflicted persons if the heading for the disease or affliction exists. Use –**Psychological aspects** under the heading for the disease or affliction instead (cf. H 1150).

\$x **Public opinion** (H 1955)

Use for works on public opinion about the group. For works on attitudes or opinions held by members of the group, see –**Attitudes**.

*Qualifications*, see –**Rating of**; –**Selection and appointment**

\$v **Quotations** (H 1969)

Use for collections or discussions of quotations by or about the group.

*Quotations, maxims, etc.*, see –**Quotations**

\$x **Rating of** (*May Subd Geog*)

*Reading habits or interests*, see –**Books and reading**

\$x **Recreation** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Recruiting** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$v **Registers** (H 1558)

\$x **Rehabilitation** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Reinstatement** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Religious life** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 2015.5)

\$x **Relocation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Reporting to** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Research** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 2020)

\$x **Residence requirements** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Resignation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Respite care** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Retirement** (*May Subd Geog*)

*Salaries, allowances, etc.*, see –**Salaries, etc.**

*Salaries, commissions, etc.*, see –**Salaries, etc.**

## Free-Floating Subdivisions: Classes of Persons H 1100

**\$x Salaries, etc.** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under classes of professional or public employees. Headings for wages of non-professional employees, workers, etc., are constructed in the form: **Wages**–[*industry or class of wage earners*].

**\$x Salaries, etc. \$x Cost-of-living adjustments** (*May Subd Geog*)

**\$x Salaries, etc. \$x Law and legislation** (*May Subd Geog*)

*Salaries, pensions, etc.*, see –**Pensions**; –**Salaries, etc.**

**\$x Scholarships, fellowships, etc.** (*May Subd Geog*)

**\$x Selection and appointment** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

**\$x Services for** (*May Subd Geog*)

**\$x Sexual behavior** (*May Subd Geog*)

**\$x Social conditions** (*H 2055*)

**\$x Social conditions \$y 16th century** (*H 2055*)

**\$x Social conditions \$y 17th century** (*H 2055*)

**\$x Social conditions \$y 18th century** (*H 2055*)

**\$x Social conditions \$y 19th century** (*H 2055*)

**\$x Social conditions \$y 20th century** (*H 2055*)

**\$x Social conditions \$y 21st century** (*H 2055*)

**\$x Social life and customs** (*H 2057*)

**\$x Social life and customs \$y 16th century** (*H 2057*)

**\$x Social life and customs \$y 17th century** (*H 2057*)

**\$x Social life and customs \$y 18th century** (*H 2057*)

**\$x Social life and customs \$y 19th century** (*H 2057*)

**\$x Social life and customs \$y 20th century** (*H 2057*)

**\$x Social life and customs \$y 21st century** (*H 2057*)

**\$x Social networks** (*May Subd Geog*)

**\$x Societies, etc.** (*H 2060*)

Do not use under headings for classes of persons if the corresponding heading for the discipline can be assigned. For example, use **Engineering**–**Societies, etc.** *not* **Engineers**–**Societies, etc.**, but do use **Women engineers**–**Societies, etc.** or **African American engineers**–**Societies, etc.**

**\$x Societies and clubs** (*H 2060*)

Use under age and sex groups.

*Socioeconomic status*, see –**Economic conditions**; –**Social conditions**

**\$v Songs and music** (*H 2075*)

**\$x Songs and music \$x History and criticism** (*H 2075*)

**\$v Songs and music \$v Texts** (*H 2190*)

**\$x Statistical services** (*H 2095*)

**\$v Statistics** (*H 2095*)

## H 1100 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Classes of Persons

\$x **Study and teaching** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 2110)

Use only for works on study and teaching about the group as a topic.

The free-floating subdivision –**Study and teaching**, qualified by level of study, for example, –**Study and teaching (Elementary)**; –**Study and teaching (Secondary)**, may also be used under classes of persons (cf. H 1095).

\$x **Substance use** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Suffrage** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Suicidal behavior** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Supervision of** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Supplementary employment** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Supply and demand** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Surgery** (*May Subd Geog*)

Do not use under headings for persons with specific diseases to cover surgical treatment of the disease. Use [*disease*]–**Surgery** instead (cf. H 1150).

\$x **Surgery** \$x **Complications** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Surgery** \$x **Risk factors** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Suspension** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Taxation** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Taxation** \$x **Law and legislation** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Telephone directories** (H 1558)

\$v **Terminology** (H 2184)

\$x **Time management** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Titles**

\$x **Tobacco use** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Tombs** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Training of** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 2217)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Transfer**

\$x **Transportation** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 2225)

\$x **Travel** (*May Subd Geog*)

*Treatment, see –Care*

\$x **Uniforms**

\$x **Violence against** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Vocational guidance** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 2232)

Use only if a heading for the corresponding field or activity does not exist or cannot be established, for example, **Allied health personnel–Vocational guidance**.

*Working conditions, see –Employment*



## Free-Floating Subdivisions: Classes of Persons H 1100

*\$x* **Workload** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

*\$x* **Wounds and injuries** (*May Subd Geog*)



## Free-Floating Subdivisions: Ethnic Groups H 1103

\$x **Jewelry** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Job stress** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Juvenile drama** (*H 1690*)

\$v **Juvenile fiction** (*H 1690*)

\$v **Juvenile humor** (*H 1690*)

\$v **Juvenile poetry** (*H 1690*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** (*H 1574*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Assassination**

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Children**

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Death and burial**

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Education** (*H 1579*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$v **Folklore** (*H 1627*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$v **Genealogy** (*H 1631*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Mythology** (*H 1998*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Religious aspects** (*H 1998*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Succession**

\$x **Kinship** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works on the group's system of rules governing descent, succession, marriage, etc., and determining the relationships of individuals.

\$x **Land tenure** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Languages**

Use for works discussing collectively the languages spoken by the group. Do not use to designate a linguistic family for which a separate heading is established, for example,

**Papuan languages; Slavic languages.**

See H 1154 for further subdivisions used under languages.

\$x **Languages** \$v **Texts** (*H 2109*)

*Law and legislation, see –Legal status, laws, etc.*

\$x **Legal status, laws, etc.** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1705*)

\$x **Library resources**

\$x **Life skills assessment** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Life skills guides**

\$v **Literary collections**

\$v **Longitudinal studies** (*H 1848*)

\$x **Manuscripts** (*H 1855*)

\$v **Maps** (*H 1865*)

\$x **Marriage customs and rites** (*May Subd Geog*)

Do not use under **Jews**. Use **Marriage customs and rites, Jewish** instead.

\$x **Material culture** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Mathematics**

## H 1103 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Ethnic Groups

\$x **Medals** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medical care** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medical examinations** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medicine** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medicine** \$v **Formulae, receipts, prescriptions**

\$x **Mental health** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1890)

\$x **Mental health services** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1890)

\$x **Migrations**

\$x **Missions** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works discussing missions to the group. For missions and missionary activities of the group or nationality, use headings of the type **Missions, [...]**, for example, **Missions, Belgian; Missions, Tamil**. Do not use **–Missions** under **Jews**; use **Missions to Jews** instead. For the missionary activities of Judaism, use **Proselytizing–Judaism**.

\$x **Money** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Monuments** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Mortality** (*May Subd Geog*)

*Mortuary customs*, see **–Funeral customs and rites**

\$x **Museums** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1916)

Do not use under **Jews**. Use **Jewish museums** instead.

\$v **Music** (H 1917)

Use for music of the group. For music about the group, see **–Songs and music**.

\$x **Music** \$v **Bibliography**

\$x **Music** \$v **Discography**

\$x **Music** \$x **History and criticism**

\$x **Name** (H 1919)

\$v **Newspapers** (H 1920)

Use under ethnic groups for newspapers of those groups. For example, use under ethnic groups in the United States for individual American ethnic newspapers. For works about ethnic newspapers, use headings of the type [...] **newspapers**, for example, **German American newspapers**.

\$x **Nutrition** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Obituaries**

\$x **Origin**

\$v **Outlines, syllabi, etc.**

*Outside employment*, see **–Supplementary employment**

\$x **Pastoral counseling of** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Pensions** (*May Subd Geog*)

*Personal finance*, see **–Finance, Personal**

\$x **Physiology** (*May Subd Geog*)

## Free-Floating Subdivisions: Corporate Bodies H 1105

**\$v Juvenile poetry** (H 1690)

**\$x Language**

**\$x Libraries**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies having library systems of more than one library for which no corporate heading exists or can be established.

**\$x Library** (H 1427)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies provided that the corporate body is the owner or collector and the collection is not a formally organized library. If the collection is a formally organized library, it should be established as a name heading.

**\$x Library resources**

**\$v Literary collections**

**\$x Management**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, including government agencies, galleries, museums, parks, etc. Use **–Administration** under names of individual libraries and individual institutions in the spheres of health, social services, and education.

**\$x Map collections** (H 1427)

**\$v Maps** (H 1865)

**\$x Maps \$v Bibliography**

**\$v Maps for children**

**\$x Medals**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies other than military services for commemorative or honorary medals issued or awarded in relation to the body. Use **–Medals, badges, decorations, etc.**, under military services.

**\$x Membership**

Use for works on the conditions of belonging to the organization.

**\$v Microform catalogs** (H 1361)

**\$x Museums** (H 1916)

**\$x Musical instrument collections** (H 1427)

**\$x Name** (H 1919)

**\$x Natural history collections** (H 1427)

**\$x Numismatic collections** (H 1427)

**\$x Officials and employees**

Use under names of individual international, government, or quasi-governmental agencies.

Use **–Employees** under names of individual nongovernmental corporate bodies.

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

**\$x Officials and employees \$x Accidents**

**\$x Officials and employees \$x Furloughs**

**\$x Officials and employees \$x Leave regulations**

**\$x Officials and employees \$x Salaries, etc.**

## H 1105 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Corporate Bodies

**\$x Officials and employees \$x Salaries, etc. \$x Regional disparities**

**\$x Officials and employees \$x Turnover**

**\$x On postage stamps (H 1945)**

**\$x Organs**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies having one or more organs, especially churches, concert halls, etc.

**\$x Party work**

Use under names of individual political parties.

**\$x Performances (May Subd Geog)**

Use under performing groups of all types for works about their performances.

**\$x Personnel management**

**\$x Personnel records**

**\$x Photograph collections (H 1427)**

**\$v Pictorial works (H 1935)**

**\$x Planning**

**\$v Platforms**

Use under names of individual political parties.

**\$v Poetry (H 1800)**

**\$x Political activity (H 1942)**

**\$x Positions**

Use under names of individual government agencies.

**\$x Poster collections (H 1427)**

**\$v Posters (H 1945.5)**

**\$x Presidents**

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

**\$x Press coverage (May Subd Geog)**

**\$x Privileges and immunities**

Use under names of individual international agencies.

**\$x Procurement**

Use under names of individual government agencies.

**\$x Public opinion (H 1955)**

**\$x Public records**

Use under names of individual government agencies.

**\$x Public relations (May Subd Geog)**

**\$x Publishing (May Subd Geog)**

**\$x Purges**

Use under names of individual political parties.

**\$v Records and correspondence**

**\$v Registers (H 1558)**

## Free-Floating Subdivisions: Corporate Bodies H 1105

\$x **Religion** (H 1997)

\$x **Reorganization**

\$x **Research** (May Subd Geog) (H 2020)

\$x **Research grants**

\$x **Rituals**

Use under names of individual secret societies.

\$v **Rules and practice**

Do not use under individual educational institutions and military services. Use **–Regulations** instead (cf. H 1151; H 1159)

\$x **Sanitation**

\$x **Scientific apparatus collections** (H 1427)

\$x **Seal**

\$x **Security measures**

\$x **Slide collections** (H 1427)

\$x **Societies, etc.** (H 2060)

\$v **Songs and music** (H 2075)

\$x **Songs and music** \$x **History and criticism** (H 2075)

\$v **Songs and music** \$v **Texts** (H 2190)

\$x **Stamp collections** (H 1427)

\$v **Statistics** (H 2095)

\$v **Telephone directories** (H 1558)

\$v **Terminology** (H 2184)

\$v **Tours** (H 1645)

\$x **Travel** (May Subd Geog)

\$v **Trials, litigation, etc.** (H 2228)

\$x **Uniforms**

\$x **Vocational guidance** (May Subd Geog) (H 2232)





## Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

**\$x Map collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of maps.

*Marginalia*, see –**Library**–**Marginal notes**; –**Scholia**

**\$x Marriage**

See also –**Divorce**

**\$x Medals**

**\$v Meditations**

Use as a form subdivision for works containing descriptions of thoughts or reflections on the spiritual significance of the person's life or deeds.

**\$x Mental health** (H 1890)

Use for works discussing the person's state of mental health, including mental illness and accounts of specific mental disorders. For accounts of specific disorders or situations, assign an additional heading of the type: [*disease*]–**Patients**–[*place*]–**Biography**; **Psychotherapy patients**–[*place*]–**Biography**; etc.

**\$x Military leadership**

**\$x Miracles**

Use under persons to whom miracles are attributed.

**\$x Monuments** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1334)

Use for works about monuments erected in honor of the person.

See also –**Museums**; –**Shrines**; –**Statues**; –**Tomb**

**\$x Motion picture plays**

Use for discussions of film scripts written by a literary author. Do not use under authors who write principally motion picture plays. For discussions of motion picture adaptations of the person's creative works, see –**Film and video adaptations**.

*Motives, themes*, see –**Themes, motives**

**\$x Museums** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1916)

Use for works on museums devoted to the person.

See also –**Archives**; –**Collectibles**; –**Death mask**; –**Relics**; –**Shrines**; –**Tomb**

*Music*, see –**Songs and music**

**\$x Musical instrument collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of musical instruments.

**\$v Musical settings**

Use as a form subdivision for musical scores or sound recordings in which writings or words of the person have been set to music.

**\$x Musical settings** **\$x History and criticism**

## H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

**\$x Name** (H 1919)

Use for discussions of the history, orthography, etymology, etc., of the person's name.

See also –**Anonyms and pseudonyms**; –**Titles**

**\$x Natural history collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of natural history items or specimens.

**\$v Notebooks, sketchbooks, etc.**

Use for collections or discussions of the person's notebooks, sketchbooks, etc. Also use for individual works.

**\$x Numismatic collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's numismatics collections.

See also –**Coin collections**

**\$x Numismatics**

Use for works discussing the representation of the person on coins, tokens, medals, paper money, etc.

See also –**Medals**

*Old age*, see –**Last years**

*Opponents*, see –**Adversaries**

**\$x On postage stamps** (H 1945)

Use for works about the portrayal of the person on postage stamps.

**\$x On television**

Use for works that discuss television programming about the person, including dramatic or documentary shows, news programs, and advertising. Do not use for works on the person as a television actor, television host, news anchor, etc.

**\$x Oratory**

Use for works discussing the person's public speaking ability.

**\$v Outlines, syllabi, etc.**

**\$x Palaces** (*May Subd Geog*)

*Paraphrases*, see –**Adaptations**

**\$x Pardon**

Use for works about the person's legal release from the penalty of an offense.

**\$v Parodies, imitations, etc.**

Use as both a form and topical subdivision for imitations, either comic or distorted, of the person's creative works.

*Patronage of the arts*, see –**Art patronage**

**\$x Performances** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under performing artists or performers of all types for works about their performances. Also use under composers, choreographers, etc. for works about performances of their compositions or works.

See also –**Dramatic production**; –**Stage history**

## Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

**\$x Stamp collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's stamp collections. For works about the portrayal of the person on postage stamps, see **–On postage stamps**.

**\$x Statues** (May Subd Geog)

Use for works discussing or containing reproductions of statues representing the person.

*Stories of operas*, see **–Stories, plots, etc.**

**\$v Stories, plots, etc.**

Use under composers, choreographers, and literary authors for works summarizing or discussing the stories or plots of their works.

*Style, Literary*, see **–Literary art; –Literary style**

**\$x Symbolism**

Use for discussions of the symbols employed by the person in his creative works.

*Table-talk*, see **–Quotations**

*Tales*, see **–Legends; –Romances**

**\$x Teachings**

Use for works discussing in general the body of knowledge, precepts, or doctrines the person taught to others.

**\$x Technique**

Use under literary authors for discussions of structural and formal elements in drama, fiction, and narrative poetry, such as asides, soliloquies, unities, scene structure, and stream-of-consciousness.

*Textual criticism*, see **–Criticism, Textual**

**\$v Thematic catalogs** (H 1322, H 1438)

Use under composers for lists of their musical compositions that include musical notation for the opening measures of individual works or sections of works.

**\$x Themes, motives**

Use for discussions of the themes and motives in the person's creative works. Assign an additional heading for an individual theme.

*Theology*, see **–Religion**

**\$x Titles**

Use for terms or phrases applied to the person as titles of address, titles of nobility, etc.

**\$x Tomb**

Use for works about the person's grave, interred bones, etc. For works on disinterred bones, see **–Relics**.

See also **–Death and burial**

**\$x Tragedies**

Use for criticism of tragedies by a literary author. Do not use under dramatists who write principally tragedies.

## H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

### **\$x Tragicomedies**

Use for criticism of tragicomedies by a literary author. Do not use under dramatists who write principally tragicomedies.

### **\$v Translations** (*H 2220*)

Use for collections of translations of a literary author. Do not use as a form heading for single translations.

### **\$x Translations** **\$x History and criticism**

### **\$v Translations into French, [German, etc.]**

### **\$x Translations into French, [German, etc.]** **\$x History and criticism**

### **\$x Travel** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works about voyages and travels undertaken by the person whether written by the persons or by others. When the subdivision is further subdivided by place, assign an additional heading of the type [*place*]-**Description and travel**.

See also –**Exile**

### **\$v Trials, litigation, etc.** (*H 2228*)

Use for proceedings or discussions of proceedings of civil or criminal actions to which the person is a party.

### **\$x Versification**

Use for discussions of a literary author's technique of writing verse, including the structural composition of poetry, rhythm, rhyme, alliteration, etc.

*Video adaptations*, see –**Film and video adaptations**

*Views on [specific topic]*

For works discussing the person's opinions or attitudes on a specific topic, whether explicitly stated or inferred, assign the heading for the person and an additional heading for the specific topic. For works on the person's knowledge of a specific topic, whether explicitly stated or inferred from his or her life and works, see –**Knowledge**-[*specific topic*].

*Views on aesthetics*, see –**Aesthetics**

*Views on ethics*, see –**Ethics**

*Views on politics and society*, see –**Political and social views**

*Views on religion*, see –**Religion**

*Views on society*, see –**Political and social views**

*Voyages*, see –**Travel**

*Weblogs*, see –**Blogs**

### **\$x Will**

Use for discussions of the person's legal declaration regarding the disposition of his property or estate, including discussions or cases of contested wills.

See also –**Estate**

*Writing skill*, see –**Literary art**

## Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Families H 1120

**TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED:** The subdivisions listed below may be used on a free-floating basis, as appropriate, under subject headings for individual families, dynasties, royal houses, etc., for example, **Smith family; Ptolemaic dynasty, 305-30 B.C.; Bourbon, House of; Normandy, Dukes of.**

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$v Anecdotes
- \$x Archaeological collections (H 1427)
- \$v Archives (H 1230)
- \$x Art collections (H 1427)
- \$x Art patronage
- \$x Bonsai collections (H 1427)
- \$v Caricatures and cartoons
- \$v Catalogs (H 1360)
- \$x Clothing
- \$x Coin collections (H 1427)
- \$v Correspondence (H 1480)
- \$v Diaries (H 1538)
- \$v Directories (H 1558)
- \$v Drama (H 1780)
- \$x Ethnological collections (H 1427)
- \$x Ethnomusicological collections (H 1427)
- \$v Fiction (H 1790)
- \$x Health
- \$x Herbarium (H 1427)
- \$x Homes and haunts (May Subd Geog)
- \$x In literature (H 362; H 1780; H 1790; H 1800)
- \$x In mass media
- \$x In motion pictures
- \$x Library (H 1427)
- \$v Literary collections
- \$x Manuscripts
- \$x Map collections (H 1427)
- \$x Monuments (May Subd Geog) (H 1916)
- \$x Museums (May Subd Geog) (H 1427)
- \$x Musical instrument collections (H 1427)

## H 1120 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Families

- \$x Natural history collections (H 1427)
- \$x Numismatic collections (H 1427)
- \$x Photograph collections (H 1427)
- \$v Pictorial works (H 1935)
- \$v Poetry (H 1800)
- \$x Political activity (H 1942)
- \$v Portraits (H 1935)
- \$x Poster collections (H 1427)
- \$v Quotations (H 1969)
- \$v Registers (H 1558)
- \$x Relics (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Scientific apparatus collections (H 1427)
- \$x Slide collections (H 1427)
- \$x Societies, etc. (H 2060)
- \$x Stamp collections (H 1427)
- \$x Tombs (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Trials, litigation, etc. (H 2228)

## Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

**PATTERN:** *Fishes; Cattle*

**TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN:** Headings for individual animals and groups of animals at all taxonomic levels, established using either common or scientific names, including animals in their natural or wild state, and those raised or cared for by humans. The pattern also covers headings for extinct and fossil animals. *Examples:* **Aedes aegypti; Aquarium fishes; Bigeye tuna; Canada goose; Dinosaurs; Diptera; Dodo; Echinodermata, Fossil; Honeybee; Laboratory animals; Marine animals; Mollusks; Pets; Predatory animals; Sheep.** Included are individual breeds or groups of domestic animals, for example, **Tennessee walking horse; Poodles;** and headings for age and sex groups, for example, **Chicks; Foals; Cows.** The general headings **Animals; Domestic animals;** and **Livestock** are excluded. The category also does not include individually named animals such as **Seattle Slew (Race horse)** or **Morris (Cat).** The subdivisions below are also not used under phrase headings of the type **[animal] as laboratory animals** or **[animal] as pets.** Instead, these phrase headings are assigned along with headings of the type **[animal]–[appropriate subdivision from the list below].** Also excluded are headings for individual microorganisms. If a subdivision from this list is needed for use under a heading for an individual microorganism, it is established editorially rather than assigned as a free-floating subdivision. The category is represented by two pattern headings: **Fishes** and **Cattle.** Establish subdivisions appropriate for animals in general under **Fishes;** establish subdivisions specific to domestic animals under **Cattle.** Subdivisions having restricted use or needing explanation are explained in endnotes.

*Note:* In August 1993, the pattern heading list for domestic animals, H 1148, was discontinued. The subdivisions on that list were integrated into this list, and the scope of coverage of this list was expanded to include domestic animals.

**CONFLICTS:** Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

*LC practice:*

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

## H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$x Abnormalities<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Adaptation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Age (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Age determination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Aging
- \$x Aging \$x Prevention
- \$x Anatomy
- \$x Artificial insemination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Artificial spawning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Autopsy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Behavior (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Behavior \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Behavior \$x Endocrine aspects
- \$x Behavior \$x Evolution (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Biography
- \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Boning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Breeding<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Breeding \$x Selection indexes
- \$x Cannibalism (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Carcasses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Carcasses \$x Biodegradation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Carcasses \$x Grading (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Carcasses \$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cardiovascular system
- \$v Catalogs and collections (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Chemical defenses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Classification
- \$x Classification \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cloning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Collection and preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Colonization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Composition
- \$x Condition scoring (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Conformation (*May Subd Geog*)



## Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

\$x Conservation (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Conservation \$x Law and legislation<sup>3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Control \$x Law and legislation<sup>3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Cooperative marketing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Counting (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Cultural control (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Cytogenetics  
\$x Cytology  
\$x Defenses (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Detection (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Development (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Development \$x Endocrine aspects  
\$x Digestive organs  
\$x Diseases<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Diseases \$x Alternative treatment<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Diseases \$x Chemotherapy<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Diseases \$x Chiropractic treatment<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Diseases \$x Diagnosis<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Diseases \$x Diet therapy<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Diseases \$x Epidemiology<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Diseases \$x Genetic aspects<sup>4</sup>  
\$x Diseases \$x Homeopathic treatment<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Diseases \$x Molecular aspects<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Diseases \$x Nursing<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Diseases \$x Nutritional aspects<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Diseases \$x Prevention<sup>4</sup>  
\$x Diseases \$x Treatment<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Dissection (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Dormancy<sup>5</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Ecophysiology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Effect of acid precipitation on (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Effect of aircraft on (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Effect of altitude on<sup>5</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Effect of chemicals on<sup>6</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Effect of cold on (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Effect of contaminated sediments on (*May Subd Geog*)

## H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

- \$x Effect of dams on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of dredging on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of drought on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of drugs on<sup>6</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of exotic animals on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of fires on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of fishing on<sup>5</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of floods on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of forest management on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of habitat modification on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of heavy metals on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of human beings on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of hunting on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of insecticides on<sup>6</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of light on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of logging on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of metals on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of music on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of noise on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of odors on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of oil spills on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of pesticides on<sup>6</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of predation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of radioactive pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of roads on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of salt on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of sediments on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of sound on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of storms on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of stray currents on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of stress on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of surface active agents on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of turbidity on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of volcanic eruptions on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water acidification on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water currents on (*May Subd Geog*)

## Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

\$x Effect of water levels on (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Effect of water pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Effect of water quality on (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Eggs (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Eggs \$x Counting (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Eggs \$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Eggs \$x Geographical distribution  
\$x Eggs \$x Incubation (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Embryology  
\$x Embryos (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Embryos \$x Anatomy  
\$x Embryos \$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Embryos \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Embryos \$x Transplantation (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Endocrinology  
\$x Environmental enrichment (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Equipment and supplies  
\$x Evolution (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Exercise (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Exercise \$x Physiological aspects  
\$x Feed utilization efficiency (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Feeding and feeds<sup>7</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Feeding and feeds \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Feeding and feeds \$x Contamination (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Feeding and feeds \$v Recipes  
\$x Fertility (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Fetuses  
\$x Fetuses \$x Anatomy  
\$x Fetuses \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Flight<sup>5</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Fluorescence<sup>5</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Food<sup>8</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Fractures<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Generative organs  
\$x Genetic engineering (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Genetics  
\$x Genome mapping (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Geographical distribution  
\$x Geographical distribution \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Germplasm resources (*May Subd Geog*)

## H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

\$x Germplasm resources \$x Cryopreservation (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Germplasm resources \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Grading (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Grooming<sup>9</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Growth  
\$x Habitat (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Habitat \$x Conservation (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Habitat suitability index models (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Habitations<sup>10</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Handling<sup>11</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Health (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Hibernation (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Histology  
\$x Histopathology  
\$x Home range (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Homing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Host plants (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Housing<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Housing \$x Air conditioning<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Housing \$x Decoration<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Housing \$x Design and construction<sup>12</sup>  
\$x Housing \$x Disinfection<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Housing \$x Environmental engineering<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Housing \$x Heating and ventilation<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Housing \$x Insulation<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Housing \$x Lighting<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Housing \$x Odor control<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Housing \$x Safety measures<sup>12</sup>  
\$x Housing \$x Sanitation<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Housing \$v Specifications<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Housing \$x Waste disposal<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Hybridization (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$v Identification  
\$x Immunology  
\$x Immunology \$x Genetic aspects  
\$x Induced spawning (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Infancy (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Infections<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Infertility (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Inspection (*May Subd Geog*)

## Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

\$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Judging (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Larvae (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Larvae \$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Larvae \$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Larvae \$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Larvae \$x Endocrinology  
\$x Larvae \$x Food (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Larvae \$x Geographical distribution  
\$x Larvae \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Law and legislation<sup>3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Life cycles (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Locomotion (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Longevity (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Losses (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Manure (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Manure \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Manure \$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Marketing  
\$x Marketing \$x Law and legislation<sup>3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Marking<sup>13</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Mercury content (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Metabolism  
\$x Metabolism \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Metamorphosis<sup>5</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Metamorphosis \$x Endocrine aspects<sup>5</sup>  
\$x Metamorphosis \$x Genetic aspects<sup>5</sup>  
\$x Metamorphosis \$x Molecular aspects<sup>5</sup>  
\$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Migration (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Migration \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Migration \$x Endocrine aspects  
\$x Molecular aspects  
\$x Molecular genetics  
\$x Monitoring (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Morphogenesis (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Morphology  
\$x Mortality (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Names<sup>14</sup>  
\$x Nervous system

## H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

\$x Nests (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Nests \$x Abandonment (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Nests \$x Counting (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$v Nomenclature<sup>15</sup>  
\$v Nomenclature (Popular)<sup>16</sup>  
\$v Nomenclature (Popular) \$x French, [Italian, etc.]<sup>16</sup>  
\$x Nutrition (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Nutrition \$x Requirements (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Odor (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Orientation (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Origin  
\$x Parasites (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Parasites \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Parasites \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Parasites \$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Parasites \$v Identification  
\$x Parasites \$x Life cycles (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Parasites \$x Molecular aspects  
\$x Parturition (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Pathogens (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$v Pedigrees  
\$v Performance records  
\$x Photographic identification (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Phylogeny  
\$x Phylogeny \$x Molecular aspects  
\$x Physiological genomics  
\$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Population viability analysis (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Predators of (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Predators of \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Predators of \$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Pregnancy (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Processing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Productivity (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Psychic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Psychological aspects<sup>17</sup>  
\$x Psychological testing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Psychology<sup>18</sup>  
\$x Purchasing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)

## Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

- \$x Racial analysis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radio tracking (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Recolonization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reintroduction (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Reproduction<sup>19</sup>
- \$x Reproduction \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reproduction \$x Effect of altitude on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reproduction \$x Effect of light on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reproduction \$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reproduction \$x Endocrine aspects
- \$x Reproduction \$x Regulation
- \$x Respiration (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Respiratory organs
- \$x Schooling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seasonal distribution (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seasonal variations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Selection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sense organs
- \$x Services for (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sexing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sexual behavior (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Showing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Size (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Spawning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Speciation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Speed
- \$x Spermatozoa
- \$x Spermatozoa \$x Abnormalities (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Spermatozoa \$x Morphology
- \$x Stranding (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Summering (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Complications (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Nursing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Symbolic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Technological innovations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Territoriality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Testing

## H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

- \$x Therapeutic use (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Toxicology<sup>20</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Training (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transportation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Trypanotolerance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Type specimens (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vaccination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Variation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Venom<sup>20</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Venom resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vertical distribution (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Virus diseases<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Viruses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vocalization<sup>5</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vocalization \$x Regulation<sup>5</sup>
- \$x Water requirements (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Weight
- \$x Wintering (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Wounds and injuries<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)

### NOTES

<sup>1</sup>Subdivisions on this list that represent specific pathological conditions, for example, –**Abnormalities**, –**Fractures**; –**Infections**; –**Virus diseases**; –**Wounds and injuries**, may be further subdivided by subdivisions listed under the subdivision –**Diseases**, for example, –**Diseases–Diagnosis**; **Diseases–Treatment**.

<sup>2</sup>Use –**Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of animals by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or breed. Use –**Reproduction** for the physiological process by which animals generate offspring of the same kind.

<sup>3</sup>See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

<sup>4</sup>Subdivisions listed under –**Diseases** may also be used under subdivisions on this list that represent specific pathological conditions, for example, –**Infections–Diagnosis**; –**Fractures–Treatment**.

<sup>5</sup>Not established under **Fishes**. Use under individual animals and groups of animals as appropriate.

<sup>6</sup>Assign additional headings of the type [*individual chemical*]–**Physiological effect** for individual chemicals, drugs, insecticides, pesticides, etc.

<sup>7</sup>Use –**Feeding and feeds** for the nutritional preparations provided for animals by humans as well as for the process of providing nourishment to them. Use –**Food** for the nutritional substances that animals find on their own or provide for themselves as well as for their food habits.



## Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

<sup>8</sup>Use **–Food** for the nutritional substances animals find on their own or provide for themselves as well as for their food habits. Use **–Feeding and feeds** for the nutritional preparations provided for animals by humans as well as for the process of providing nourishment to them.

<sup>9</sup>Use **–Grooming** for the human tending, cleaning, brushing, etc., of animals.

<sup>10</sup>Use **–Habitations** for the natural shelters and homes that animals build for themselves, such as burrows, dens, lairs, lodges, etc. Use **–Nests** under nesting animals. Use **–Housing** for the shelters and structures that humans construct and provide for wild or domestic animals.

<sup>11</sup>Not established under **Fishes**; use **Fish handling** instead. Use **–Handling** under other individual animals and groups of animals as appropriate.

<sup>12</sup>Use **–Housing** for the shelters and structures that humans construct and provide for wild or domestic animals. Use **–Habitations** for the natural shelters and homes that animals build for themselves.

<sup>13</sup>Not established under **Fishes**. Use **Fish tagging** instead. Use under individual animals and groups of animals as appropriate.

<sup>14</sup>Use **–Names** for the history, origin, customs, etc., of selecting personal names for individual animals.

<sup>15</sup>Use **–Nomenclature** for systematically derived lists of names or designations that have been formally adopted or sanctioned, or for discussions of the principles involved in the creation or application of those names to taxonomic groupings of animals.

<sup>16</sup>Use **–Nomenclature (Popular)** for lists or discussions of common names for animal groupings.

<sup>17</sup>Use **–Psychological aspects** for the influence of animals on the human mental condition or personality.

<sup>18</sup>Use **–Psychology** for the mental processes or characteristics of animals.

<sup>19</sup>Use **–Reproduction** for the physiological process by which animals generate offspring of the same kind. Use **–Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of animals by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or breed.

<sup>20</sup>Not established under **Fishes**. Established instead under **Poisonous fishes**. Use under individual animals and groups of animals as appropriate.



## Pattern Headings: Chemicals H 1149

- \$x Mechanism of action
- \$x Metabolic detoxification (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Metabolism
- \$x Metabolism \$x Age factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Metabolism \$x Disorders<sup>9</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Metabolism \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Metabolism \$x Regulation
- \$x Methylation
- \$x Molecular rotation
- \$x Optical properties
- \$x Overdose<sup>6</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Oxidation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pathophysiology
- \$x Peroxidation
- \$x Permeability
- \$x Pharmacokinetics
- \$x Physiological effect (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Physiological transport
- \$x Prices (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Psychotropic effects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Purification (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Quenching (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radioiodination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reactivity (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Receptors
- \$x Receptors \$x Effect of drugs on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Recycling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Research (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Research \$x Law and legislation<sup>8</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sampling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Secretion
- \$x Secretion \$x Regulation
- \$x Separation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Side effects<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Solubility (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Speciation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Spectra
- \$x Stability

## H 1149 Pattern Headings: Chemicals

\$x Standards (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Structure  
\$x Structure-activity relationships  
\$x Surfaces  
\$x Synthesis  
\$x Synthesis \$x Inhibitors  
\$x Synthesis \$x Regulation  
\$x Testing<sup>10</sup>  
\$x Therapeutic use<sup>11</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Therapeutic use \$x Administration<sup>12</sup>  
\$x Therapeutic use \$x Controlled release<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Therapeutic use \$x Effectiveness<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Therapeutic use \$x Side effects<sup>12</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Therapeutic use \$x Testing<sup>12</sup>  
\$x Thermal conductivity (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Thermal properties (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Threshold limit values (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Toxicity testing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Toxicology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Toxicology \$x Age factors (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Toxicology \$v Biography  
\$x Toxicology \$x Reporting (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Transport properties (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Vapor pressure (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Viscosity<sup>13</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Welding (*May Subd Geog*)

### NOTES

<sup>1</sup>Not established under **Copper** or **Insulin**. Use only under individual drugs and groups of drugs, for example, **Anesthetics–Administration**; **Antibiotics–Controlled release**; **Analgesics–Effectiveness**; **Thalidomide–Side effects**; **Oral contraceptives–Side effects**. For individual and groups of non-drug chemicals, use **–Therapeutic use–Administration**; **–Therapeutic use–Controlled release**; **–Therapeutic use–Effectiveness**; and **–Therapeutic use–Side effects**.

<sup>2</sup>The subdivisions **–Agonists**, **–Antagonists**, **–Derivatives**, **–Inhibitors**, and **–Isotopes** represent chemicals and may be further subdivided by other subdivisions from this list as appropriate.

<sup>3</sup>Not valid under individual enzymes and groups of enzymes. Use **–Inhibitors** under individual enzymes and groups of enzymes.

## Pattern Headings: Diseases H 1150

**PATTERNS:** Cancer; Tuberculosis

**TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN:** Headings for individual or types of diseases and other medical conditions, including abnormalities, functional disorders, mental disorders, manifestations of disease, and wounds and injuries. The category includes animal as well as human diseases but does not cover plant diseases. *Examples:* **Bronchitis; Burns and scalds; Cleft palate; Down syndrome; Equine herpesvirus diseases; Fever in children; Gastrointestinal system-Motility-Disorders; Pain; Rabies; Sleep disorders; Schizophrenia; Sports injuries; Tuberculosis in poultry; Virus diseases.** Also included are headings for parts of the body divided by subdivisions for diseases, injuries, or other pathological conditions from the pattern list for organs and regions of the body (H 1164), for example, **Brain-Abscess; Breast-Cancer; Duodenum-Ulcers; Face-Abnormalities; Liver-Diseases; Skin-Infections; Spine-Wounds and injuries;** and headings for chemical substances subdivided by **-Metabolism-Disorders,** for example, **Calcium-Metabolism-Disorders; Proteins-Metabolism-Disorders.** Not covered are headings for medical or surgical procedures and the general heading **Diseases.**

**CONFLICTS:** Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

*LC practice:*

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$x Adjuvant treatment (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Age factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Alternative treatment (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Animal models (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Chemoprevention (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Chemotherapy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Chemotherapy \$x Complications (*May Subd Geog*)

## H 1150 Pattern Headings: Diseases

- \$x Chiropractic treatment<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Complications<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cryosurgery<sup>3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cryotherapy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cytodiagnosis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cytopathology<sup>3</sup>
- \$x Diagnosis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diet therapy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diet therapy \$v Recipes
- \$x Differentiation therapy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dosimetric treatment (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Eclectic treatment (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Endocrine aspects
- \$x Endoscopic surgery<sup>3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Epidemiology
- \$x Etiology
- \$x Exercise therapy<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Gene therapy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Histopathology
- \$x Homeopathic treatment (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hormone therapy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hormone therapy \$x Complications (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hospitals (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Imaging<sup>3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Immunodiagnosis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Immunological aspects
- \$x Immunotherapy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Interventional radiology<sup>3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Intraoperative radiotherapy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Laser surgery<sup>3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Law and legislation<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Magnetic resonance imaging<sup>3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Molecular diagnosis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Mortality<sup>5</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Nursing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Nutritional aspects (*May Subd Geog*)

## Pattern Headings: Individual Educational Institutions H 1151

\$x Sports  
\$x Student housing  
\$x Student strike, [date]<sup>2</sup>  
\$x Students<sup>1</sup>  
\$x Students \$v Yearbooks  
\$x Swimming  
\$x Tennis  
\$x Track and field  
\$x Tuition  
\$x Undergraduates  
\$x Volleyball  
\$x Wrestling

### *NOTES*

<sup>1</sup>See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

<sup>2</sup>See H 1078 for instructions on dates in subdivisions for specific events.





## Pattern Headings: Industries H 1153

\$x Information technology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Insurance (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Insurance \$x Law and legislation<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$v Inventories<sup>5</sup>  
\$x Inventory control (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Job vacancies (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Labor productivity (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Law and legislation<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Licenses (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Licenses \$x Fees (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Location (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Management  
\$x Management \$x Employee participation (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Management \$x Employee participation \$x Law and legislation<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Materials management (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Mergers (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Military aspects (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Noise  
\$x Ownership (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Personnel management  
\$x Planning  
\$x Political activity  
\$x Power supply (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Prices<sup>6</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Prices \$x Government policy<sup>6</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Prices \$x Law and legislation<sup>1,6</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Privatization (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Production control (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Production standards (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Quality control  
\$v Records and correspondence  
\$x Risk management (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Safety measures  
\$x Safety regulations<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Sanitation (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Seasonal variations (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Security measures (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Self-regulation (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Social aspects (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$v Specifications<sup>7</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)

## H 1153 Pattern Headings: Industries

- \$x Standards (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x State supervision (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Statistical methods
- \$x Statistical services
- \$x Subcontracting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Subsidies (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Technological innovations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Telephone directories
- \$v Trademarks
- \$x Vertical integration (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vocational guidance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Waste disposal (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Waste minimization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Water-supply

### NOTES

<sup>1</sup>See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

<sup>2</sup>See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

<sup>3</sup>Not valid under **Construction industry**.

<sup>4</sup>Not established under **Construction industry** or **Retail trade**. Use under other industries as appropriate for estimates of the cost of construction, installation, etc., or the carrying out of a task to completion, for example, **Aerospace industries—Estimates**.

<sup>5</sup>Not valid under **Retail trade**.

<sup>6</sup>Not valid under **Retail trade**. Use the subdivision **—Prices** under headings for products, merchandise, etc. Use under the heading for an industry only when one general heading for the products of that industry is lacking.

<sup>7</sup>Use under an industry only in those cases where discussion of specifications is not limited to a single product of the industry. Use under headings for products, merchandise, etc., for specifications of single products, etc.

## Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

- \$x Apposition
- \$x Archaisms
- \$x Article
- \$x Aspect
- \$x Aspiration
- \$x Asyndeton
- \$x Augmentatives
- \$x Auxiliary verbs
- \$x Business English<sup>2</sup>
- \$x Capitalization
- \$x Case
- \$x Case grammar
- \$x Cataphora
- \$x Categorical grammar
- \$x Causative
- \$v Classification<sup>3</sup>
- \$x Classifiers
- \$x Clauses
- \$x Clitics
- \$x Cognate words
- \$x Cognate words \$x Dutch, [German, etc.]
- \$x Collective nouns
- \$x Comparative clauses
- \$x Comparison
- \$x Complement
- \$x Composition and exercises
- \$x Compound words
- \$x Computer-assisted instruction
- \$x Computer-assisted instruction for foreign speakers
- \$x Computer-assisted instruction for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Concessive clauses
- \$x Conditionals
- \$x Conjunctions
- \$x Connectives
- \$x Consonants
- \$x Context
- \$x Contraction
- \$v Conversation and phrase books
- \$v Conversation and phrase books \$x English<sup>1</sup>

## H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

- \$v Conversation and phrase books \$x French, [Italian, etc.]
- \$v Conversation and phrase books \$x Polyglot
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for accountants)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for air pilots)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for animal specialists)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for bank employees)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for businesspeople)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for caregivers)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for clergy, etc.)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for computer industry employees)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for construction industry employees)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for correctional personnel)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for dental personnel)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for diplomats)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for domestics)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for farmers)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for fire fighters)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for first responders)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for fishers)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for flight attendants)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for gardeners)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for geologists)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for gourmets)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for homeowners)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for landscaping industry employees)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for lawyers)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for library employees)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for mathematicians)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for medical personnel)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for merchants)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for meteorologists)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for museum employees)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for musicians, musicologists, etc.)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for nutritionists)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for personnel department employees)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for petroleum workers)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for police)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for professionals)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for restaurant and hotel personnel)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for sailors)

## Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

\$v Conversation and phrase books (for school employees)  
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for secretaries)  
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for social workers)  
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for soldiers, etc.)  
\$v Conversation and phrase books (for tourism industry employees)  
\$x Coordinate constructions  
\$x Declension  
\$x Definiteness  
\$x Deixis  
\$x Deletion  
\$x Demonstratives  
\$x Dependency grammar  
\$x Determiners  
\$x Diacritics<sup>1</sup>  
\$x Dialectology  
\$x Dialects (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Dialects \$v Conversation and phrase books  
\$x Dialects \$v Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.  
\$x Dialects \$x Grammar  
\$x Dialects \$x Lexicology  
\$x Dialects \$x Morphology  
\$x Dialects \$x Phonetics  
\$x Dialects \$x Phonology  
\$x Dialects \$x Research (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Dialects \$x Research \$x Law and legislation<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Dialects \$x Syntax  
\$x Dialects \$v Texts  
\$x Diction  
\$v Dictionaries<sup>5</sup>  
\$v Dictionaries \$v Early works to 1700  
\$v Dictionaries \$x French, [Italian, etc.]  
\$v Dictionaries \$x Polyglot  
\$v Dictionaries, Juvenile<sup>5</sup>  
\$v Dictionaries, Juvenile \$x Hebrew, [Italian, etc.]  
\$x Diminutives  
\$x Diphthongs  
\$x Direct object  
\$x Discourse analysis  
\$x Dissimilation  
\$x Elision

## H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

- \$x Ellipsis
- \$x Emphasis
- \$x Enclitics
- \$x Epithets<sup>1</sup>
- \$x Eponyms
- \$x Ergative constructions
- \$x Errors of usage
- \$x Etymology
- \$x Etymology \$x Names
- \$x Euphemism
- \$x Exclamations
- \$v Exercises for dictation
- \$x Existential constructions
- \$x Figures of speech<sup>1</sup>
- \$v Films for foreign speakers
- \$v Films for French, [Spanish, etc. ] speakers
- \$z Foreign countries
- \$x Foreign elements
- \$x Foreign elements \$x French, [Greek, Latin, etc.]
- \$x Foreign words and phrases
- \$x Foreign words and phrases \$x Arabic, [Italian, etc.]
- \$x Function words
- \$x Gallicisms
- \$x Gemination
- \$x Gender
- \$x Gerund
- \$x Gerundive
- \$x Globalization
- \$v Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.<sup>5</sup>
- \$v Glossaries, vocabularies, etc. \$x Polyglot
- \$x Government
- \$x Government jargon
- \$x Gradation
- \$x Grammar
- \$x Grammar \$x Theory, etc.
- \$x Grammar, Comparative
- \$x Grammar, Comparative \$x French, [Latin, etc.]
- \$x Grammar, Generative
- \$x Grammar, Historical
- \$x Grammatical categories

## Pattern Headings: Literary Works Entered Under Title H 1155.8

***PATTERN:*** Beowulf

***TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN:*** Headings for literary works entered directly under uniform title, including anonymous and multi-authored works. *Examples:* **Arabian nights; Chanson de Roland; Gawain and the Grene Knight; Pearl (Middle English poem)**. The subject cataloging of anonymous sacred classics, for example, **Bible; Koran; Vedas**, differs substantially and should not be confused with the treatment of the literary works discussed here. For free-floating subdivisions used under the uniform titles of sacred works, see H 1188. For subdivisions used under literary works entered under author, see H 1155.6.

***CONFLICTS:*** Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

*LC practice:*

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

***SPECIAL PROVISIONS:*** The subdivisions listed in H 1095 as authorized for use under subjects in general, for example, –**Bibliography** or –**Exhibitions**, or under individual works (author-title or title entries), for example, –**Concordances** or –**Sources**, are also free-floating under literary works. The additional subdivisions listed below follow the usage given in the individual literary authors list (H 1110). Do not use the subdivision –**Criticism and interpretation** under entries for literary works. For a work of *general criticism and interpretation* or a discussion combining the approaches of several subdivisions, assign as a subject heading the uniform title of the literary work *without* subdivision.

## H 1155.8 Pattern Headings: Literary Works Entered Under Title

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$v Adaptations
- \$x Appreciation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Authorship
- \$x Characters
- \$x Criticism, Textual
- \$x Dramatic production
- \$v Film and video adaptations
- \$v Illustrations
- \$x Influence
- \$x Language
- \$x Language \$v Glossaries, etc.
- \$x Manuscripts
- \$v Manuscripts \$v Facsimiles
- \$v Parodies, imitations, etc.
- \$x Style
- \$v Translations
- \$x Translations \$x History and criticism
- \$v Translations into French, [German, etc.]
- \$x Translations into French, [German, etc.] \$x History and criticism
- \$x Versification



## Pattern Headings: Literatures H 1156

### II. AUTHOR GROUP SUBDIVISIONS:

Use the following free-floating subdivisions under any literature or major genre of a literature for author groups that identify subordinate bodies of that literature. Any subdivision that also designates the literature is not valid under that literature, for example, use **English literature–Celtic authors**, but *not* **Celtic literature–Celtic authors**. Author group subdivisions may be followed by any topical or form subdivision from sec. III, but may not be combined in a single heading with period subdivisions from sec. I nor used after headings for literary genres with geographic subdivisions.

Following this pattern, establish new subdivisions for internal *national*, *ethnic*, or *religious* groups *only*. For other author groups, follow the pattern of the phrase headings, **Children's writings, English–[place]** or **Prisoners' writings, French–[place]**. However, for external author groups, that is, those living outside the country normally associated with the literature to which they are contributing, use simple geographic subdivision, for example, **German literature–Romania**.

The literatures of the independent nations of Africa, Asia, and the Pacific must be established with the national or regional group as an independent literature (using a parenthetical language qualifier if necessary), for example, **African literature (French)**. Since these are no longer considered subordinate groups within the general body of literature in a language, do not formulate headings such as **French literature–African authors**.

- \$x Algerian authors
- \$x Arab authors
- \$x Armenian authors
- \$x Asian authors
- \$x Bangladeshi authors
- \$x Basque authors
- \$x Bengali authors
- \$x Black authors<sup>1</sup>
- \$x Buddhist authors
- \$x Caribbean authors
- \$x Catalan authors
- \$x Catholic authors
- \$x Celtic authors
- \$x Chinese authors
- \$x Christian authors
- \$x Christian Science authors
- \$x Dalit authors
- \$x Dravidian authors

## H 1156 Pattern Headings: Literatures

### *II. AUTHOR GROUP SUBDIVISIONS: (Continued)*

- \$x Druze authors
- \$x East Indian authors
- \$x European authors
- \$x Foreign authors
- \$x German authors
- \$x Greek authors
- \$x Hindu authors
- \$x Irish authors
- \$x Italian authors
- \$x Jaina authors
- \$x Japanese authors
- \$x Jewish authors
- \$x Jewish Christian authors
- \$x Korean authors
- \$x Kurdish authors
- \$x Kyrgyz authors
- \$x Lutheran authors
- \$x Luxembourg authors
- \$x Male authors
- \$x Maori authors
- \$x Maratha authors
- \$x Mennonite authors
- \$x Methodist authors
- \$x Minority authors
- \$x Mongolian authors
- \$x Mormon authors
- \$x Muslim authors
- \$x Orthodox Eastern authors
- \$x Parsee authors
- \$x Persian authors
- \$x Polish authors
- \$x Protestant authors
- \$x Puritan authors
- \$x Quaker authors
- \$x Scottish authors
- \$x Sindhi authors
- \$x South Asian authors
- \$x Swami-Narayani authors

## Pattern Headings: Materials H 1158

**PATTERNS:** Concrete; Metals

**TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN:** Headings for individual materials and types of materials. *Examples:* **Dental materials; Foam rubber; Glass; Laminated metals; Plastics; Plywood; Porous materials.** Included are headings formed using the free-floating subdivision –**Materials** under scientific and technical disciplines and under types of equipment and construction, for example, **Telecommunication–Materials; Space vehicles–Materials; Nuclear reactors–Materials.** The category does not include the heading **Materials.** Some overlap exists with the category for chemicals (H 1149). Headings for individual substances and types of substances such as **Polyethylene** and **Nonferrous metals** should follow the pattern for materials when they are discussed as basic substances from which something can be made, including their engineering properties, processing, suitability for intended use, etc. They should follow the pattern for chemicals when discussed from the standpoint of their chemical structure, effects, reactions, etc.

**CONFLICTS:** Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

*LC practice:*

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$x Abrasion resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Acoustic properties (*May Subd Geog*)\$x Additives (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Air content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Air content \$x Measurement
- \$x Air content \$x Measurement \$x Instruments
- \$x Analysis
- \$x Anodic oxidation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Biocompatibility (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Biodegradation (*May Subd Geog*)

## H 1158 Pattern Headings: Materials

- \$x Brittleness (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Carbon content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cavitation erosion (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Chemical resistance
- \$x Cobalt content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cold working (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Coloring
- \$x Combustion (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Compression testing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Conservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cooling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Corrosion<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Corrosion fatigue (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cracking (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Creep (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Curing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Defects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Defects \$x Reporting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Density
- \$x Deoxidizing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Desulfurization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Deterioration (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dewatering (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dissolution
- \$x Drying (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ductility
- \$x Effect of high temperatures on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of lasers on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of low temperatures on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of salt on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Elastic properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Electric properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Embrittlement
- \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Environmental testing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Erosion (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Etching (*May Subd Geog*)

## Pattern Headings: Materials H 1158

\$x Expansion and contraction (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Extrusion (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Fatigue (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Finishing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Finishing \$x Waste disposal (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Finishing \$x Waste minimization (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Fire testing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Fires and fire prevention (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Flammability (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Fluid dynamics  
\$x Formability  
\$x Fracture (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Galvanomagnetic properties (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Hardenability (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Heat treatment (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Heating (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Helium content (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Hot working (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Hydrogen content (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Hydrogen embrittlement  
\$x Impact testing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Inclusions (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Law and legislation<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Machinability  
\$x Magnetic properties (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Mechanical properties  
\$x Metallography<sup>3</sup>  
\$x Metallurgy<sup>3</sup>  
\$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Microscopy<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Microstructure  
\$x Mixing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Moisture (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Nitrogen content (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Nondestructive testing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Optical properties  
\$x Oxygen content (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Painting (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Penetration resistance

## H 1158 Pattern Headings: Materials

- \$x Permeability
- \$x Physiological effect (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pickling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pickling \$x By-products
- \$x Pickling \$x Waste disposal (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Plastic properties
- \$x Prices (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pump placing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Quality control
- \$x Quenching (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radiography (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Rapid solidification processing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Recycling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Refining (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Sampling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Skid resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Solubility (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Specifications (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Spectra
- \$x Stress corrosion (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surfaces
- \$x Surfaces \$x Defects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surfaces \$x Optical properties
- \$x Testing
- \$x Texture (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Thermal conductivity (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Thermal fatigue (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Thermal properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Thermomechanical properties
- \$x Thermomechanical treatment (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Toxicology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transport properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transportation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transportation \$x Law and legislation<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Tritium content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Viscosity (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x War use (*May Subd Geog*)

## Pattern Headings: Organs and Regions of the Body H 1164

- \$x Growth \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Growth \$x Regulation
- \$x Hemorrhage<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Histochemistry
- \$x Histology
- \$x Histopathology
- \$x Hydatids<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hypertrophy<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Imaging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Immunology
- \$x Infections<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Innervation
- \$x Interventional radiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Laser surgery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Laser surgery \$x Instruments
- \$x Lymphatics
- \$x Magnetic fields
- \$x Magnetic resonance imaging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Massage (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Mechanical properties
- \$x Metabolism
- \$x Metabolism \$x Disorders<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Metabolism \$x Endocrine aspects
- \$x Metabolism \$x Regulation
- \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Microscopy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Models (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Movements
- \$x Muscles<sup>2</sup>
- \$x Necrosis<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Needle biopsy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Paralysis<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parasites (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pathophysiology
- \$x Pathophysiology \$x Animal models
- \$x Permeability<sup>3</sup>
- \$x Phylogeny
- \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)

## H 1164 Pattern Headings: Organs and Regions of the Body

- \$x Precancerous conditions<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Protection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Psychophysiology
- \$x Radiation injuries<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radiography (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radiography \$x Law and legislation<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radiography \$x Positioning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radionuclide imaging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Regeneration (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reimplantation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Reoperation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Rupture<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Secretions
- \$x Sex differences (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Size (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sounds
- \$x Spectroscopic imaging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Complications<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Instruments
- \$x Surgery \$x Instruments \$x Sterilization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Nursing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Nutritional aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Patients<sup>5</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Risk factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Symbolic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Syphilis<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Thermography (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Tomography (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Traction (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transplantation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transplantation \$x Complications<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transplantation \$x Immunological aspects
- \$x Transplantation \$x Law and legislation<sup>4</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transplantation \$x Nursing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transplantation \$x Patients<sup>5</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)



## Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

**PATTERN:** Corn

**TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN:** Headings for individual plants and crops and groups of plants and crops, including algae, fungi, and lichens, at all taxonomic levels, established using either common or scientific names. The pattern also covers headings for extinct and fossil plants. *Examples:* **Camellias; Eucalyptus alba; Rice; Basidiomycetes; Forage plants; Grain; Fruit; Weeds; Yeast fungi; Davis' peppergrass; Franklinia; Gymnosperms, Fossil.** The category does not include the headings **Plants; Plants, Cultivated; Crops; and Field crops.**

**CONFLICTS:** Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

*LC practice:*

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$x Abnormalities (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Adaptation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Age (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Age determination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Aging
- \$x Aging \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Analysis
- \$x Anatomy
- \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Biotechnology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Breeding<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Catalogs and collections (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Chemical defenses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Chemotaxonomy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cladistic analysis (*May Subd Geog*)

## H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

- \$v Classification
- \$x Classification \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Clones (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Clones \$x Selection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Clones \$x Variation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Collection and preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Colonization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color \$x Fading (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color \$x Fading \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Composition
- \$x Conservation<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Conservation \$x Law and legislation<sup>2,3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Control \$x Law and legislation<sup>3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cooling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cooperative marketing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Counting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cultural control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cuttings (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cytochemistry
- \$x Cytogenetics
- \$x Cytology
- \$x Cytotaxonomy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Defenses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Development (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Disease and pest resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Disease and pest resistance \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Disease-free stock (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Cultural control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests \$v Identification
- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Monitoring (*May Subd Geog*)

## Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Nutritional aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dormancy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Drought tolerance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Drying (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ecophysiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of acid deposition on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of acid precipitation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of air pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of air pollution on \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Effect of aluminum sulfate on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of arsenic on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of atmospheric carbon dioxide on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of atmospheric deposition on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of atmospheric nitrogen dioxide on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of atmospheric ozone on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of browsing on<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of cadmium on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of cold on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of dichlorophenoxyacetic acid on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of dredging on<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of drought on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of ethephon on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of factory and trade waste on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of ferrous sulfate on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of fires on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of fires on \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Effect of floods on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of fluorides on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of fluorine on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of freezes on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of gamma rays on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of gases on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of global warming on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of glyphosate on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of grazing on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of greenhouse gases on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of heavy metals on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of ice on (*May Subd Geog*)

## H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

- \$x Effect of iron on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of light on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of magnesium on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of manganese on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of minerals on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of off-road vehicles on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of oxygen on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of ozone on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of pesticides on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of potassium on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of radioactive pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of salt on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of soil acidity on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of stress on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of sulfates on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of sulfur on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of thermal pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of trampling on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of trichloroethylene on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of turbidity on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of volcanic eruptions on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water levels on<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water waves on<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of wind on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Electric properties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Embryology
- \$x Embryos (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Embryos \$x Nutrition (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Equipment and supplies
- \$x Evolution (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Fertilizers (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Field experiments
- \$x Flowering
- \$x Flowering time
- \$x Frost damage (*May Subd Geog*)

## Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

- \$x Frost protection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Frost resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Fumigation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Genetic engineering (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Genetics
- \$x Genome mapping (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Geographical distribution
- \$x Geographical distribution \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Germplasm resources (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Germplasm resources \$v Catalogs and collections (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Germplasm resources \$x Cryopreservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Gift books
- \$x Grading (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Grafting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Growth
- \$x Habitat (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hardiness (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Harvesting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Harvesting \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Harvesting time (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Health (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Heirloom varieties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Herbicide injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Histochemistry
- \$x Husking (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hybridization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Identification
- \$x Industrial applications (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Inoculation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Insect resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Insect resistance \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Inspection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Irrigation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Judging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Law and legislation<sup>3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Life cycles (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Location (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Longevity (*May Subd Geog*)

## H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

- \$x Losses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Losses \$x Prevention
- \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Marketing
- \$x Mechanical properties
- \$x Metabolism
- \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Micropropagation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Microscopy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Milling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Moisture (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Molecular genetics
- \$x Monitoring (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Morphogenesis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Morphology
- \$x Mulching (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Mutation breeding (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Nomenclature
- \$v Nomenclature (Popular)
- \$x Nutrition (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Origin
- \$x Osmotic potential (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Packaging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Packing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Palynotaxonomy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Phenology
- \$x Photomorphogenesis
- \$x Phylogeny
- \$x Phylogeny \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Physiological effect (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Planting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Planting time (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pollen (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pollen \$x Morphology
- \$x Pollen management (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pollination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Population regeneration<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Population viability analysis<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)

## Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

- \$x Postharvest diseases and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Postharvest diseases and injuries \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Postharvest diseases and injuries \$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Postharvest losses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Postharvest losses \$x Prevention
- \$x Postharvest physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Postharvest technology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Precooling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Preharvest sprouting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Prices (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Processing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Processing \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Propagation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Protection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Protection \$x Law and legislation<sup>3</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Provenance trials (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Provenances (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pruning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Psychic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radiation preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radioactive contamination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radiography (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Regeneration (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reintroduction<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Reproduction<sup>4</sup>
- \$x Research (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Research \$x Law and legislation<sup>1</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Residues (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ripening (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Roots
- \$x Roots \$x Anatomy
- \$x Roots \$x Diseases and pests (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Roots \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Rootstocks (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sampling (*May Subd Geog*)

## H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

- \$x Seasonal variations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings
- \$x Seedlings \$x Ecophysiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Effect of browsing on<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Evaluation
- \$x Seedlings \$x Protection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Roots
- \$x Seedlings, Bareroot
- \$x Seedlings, Container
- \$x Seeds (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Anatomy
- \$x Seeds \$x Certification (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Dormancy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Drying (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Harvesting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$v Identification
- \$x Seeds \$x Marketing
- \$x Seeds \$x Morphology
- \$x Seeds \$x Packaging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Postharvest technology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Predators of (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Processing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Storage (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Testing
- \$x Seeds \$x Viability (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Selection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sensory evaluation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Shelling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Shelling \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Showing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Silage (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Silica content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Size (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Soils (*May Subd Geog*)



## Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

\$x Somatic embryogenesis (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Sowing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Spacing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Spores<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Spores \$x Morphology<sup>2</sup>  
\$x Speciation (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Storage (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Storage \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Storage \$x Diseases and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Technological innovations (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Temperature (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Therapeutic use (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Therapeutic use \$x Side effects (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Thermal properties (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Thinning (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Threshing (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Threshing \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Toxicology (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Training (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Transplanting (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Transplanting \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Transportation (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Transportation \$x Diseases and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Type specimens (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Ultrastructure  
\$x Utilization (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Varieties (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Variation<sup>2</sup> (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Vegetative propagation (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Vitality (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Water requirements (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Weed control (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Wounds and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Wounds and injuries \$x Diagnosis (*May Subd Geog*)  
\$x Yields (*May Subd Geog*)

## H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

### *NOTES*

<sup>1</sup>Use **–Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of plants by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or variety. Use **–Reproduction** for the physiological processes by which plants generate offspring of the same kind.

<sup>2</sup>Not established under **Corn**. Use under other plants as appropriate, for example, **Grasses–Conservation; Forest plants–Effect of browsing on; Aquatic plants–Effect of dredging on; Helophytes–Effect of water levels on; Aquatic plants–Population regeneration; Grasses–Population viability analysis; Grasses–Reintroduction; Trees–Seedlings–Effect of browsing on; Ferns–Spores; Grasses–Variation.**

<sup>3</sup>See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

<sup>4</sup>Use **–Reproduction** for the physiological processes by which plants generate offspring of the same kind. Use **–Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of plants by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or variety.

## Pattern Headings: Wars H 1200

**PATTERNS:** United States–History–Civil War, 1861-1865; World War, 1939-1945

**TYPES OF HEADINGS DESIGNATED BY THE CATEGORY:** Headings for individual wars entered directly under their names or as subdivisions under place names. The category includes armed conflicts called by other names, such as coups, revolutions, insurrections, uprisings, invasions, or civil wars. *Examples:* **Crimean War, 1853-1856; Turkey–History–Revolution, 1909; Transylvania (Romania)–History–Peasant Uprising, 1437-1438; Spain–History–Coup d'état, 1981.** The category does not include individual battles of wars, for example, **El Alamein, Battle of, Egypt, 1942.** For instructions on individual battles, see H 1285. Also not included are riots, demonstrations, protests, strikes, or other unarmed disturbances, terrorist attacks, and headings that use the word “war” metaphorically rather than literally, such as **War on Terrorism, 2001- .**

**CONFLICTS:** Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

*LC practice:*

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

**SPECIAL PROVISIONS:**

**1. Geographic subdivision.** Subdivisions on this list with the notation (*May Subd Geog*) should be further subdivided by place only when used after a war established directly under its name, for example, **World War, 1939-1945.** For a war that is established under its own name and that was fought in a single jurisdiction that is either incorporated or implied in the name, further subdivide by place in accordance with H 830 only to bring out a place other than the one named or implied in the heading, for example, **Falkland Islands War –Military intelligence–Great Britain,** or to bring out a locality within that place, for example, **South African War, 1899-1902–Campaigns–South Africa–Calvinia Region.**

## H 1200 Pattern Headings: Wars

### 1. *Geographic subdivision. (Continued)*

For a war established as a subdivision under the name of a place, generally a civil war or internal armed conflict, for example, **United States–History–Civil War, 1861-1865**, the subdivisions on this list should not be further subdivided by place.

To bring out place in connection with topical subdivisions on this list which do not further subdivide by place, do not construct a single heading by interposing the place between the heading for the war and the topical subdivision. Instead, assign two headings: one for the war divided by topic and another for the war divided by place, for example, **World War, 1914-1918–Radar** and **World War, 1914-1918–Denmark**.

2. *The subdivision –Participation, [...].* Use subdivisions of the type **–Participation, [...]**, for example, **–Participation, Juvenile**, for discussions of the participation of a particular group in the military actions of a war. Discussions of other aspects of a war in relation to a particular group, such as the war's effect on them, should be entered under a heading of the type **[name of war]–[name of group]**, for example, **World War, 1939-1945–Children**. The subdivision **–Participation, [nationality]** should be used for works about direct participation of the nationals of the country in the military actions of the war, for example, **Vietnam War, 1961-1975–Participation, Australian**, as well as for works about foreign economic and technical assistance to the combatants, for example, **Poland–History–Revolution, 1863-1864–Participation, Swedish**. Do not use **–Participation, [name of group]** for the major combatants in any particular war. Do not use **–Participation, Foreign** or **–Participation, [nationality]** under the headings **World War, 1914-1918** or **World War, 1939-1945**. For the participation of a particular country in one of the world wars, use **[name of war]–[country]**.

### 3. *Additional headings for special topics.*

a. *–Participation, [...].* When assigning **–Participation, [group of people or nationality]**, assign in addition, either a heading for the group of people involved, subdivided by place if appropriate, or a heading for the country divided by an appropriate subdivision.

## Buildings and Other Structures H 1334

### 4. References.

#### a. UF references. (Continued)

(2) **Translating and rearranging elements.** If an English form is not found and if a vernacular heading includes a generic term for which there is a clear English equivalent, translate the generic term. Rearrange the words in the heading to bring the proper name portion into the first position, if necessary. *Example:*

```
110 2# $a Castillo de Ponferrada (Ponferrada, Spain)
410 2# $a Ponferrada Castle (Ponferrada,
      Spain)
```

(3) **Proper name in the initial position.** If the name of the structure as established in the heading has a generic term rather than a proper name in the first position, add a 4XX field with the name inverted in such a way as to bring the proper name into the first position. However, omit this inverted 4XX field if any of the other 4XX fields in straight order begin with the same word. *Example:*

```
110 2# $a Castillo de Ponferrada (Ponferrada, Spain)
410 2# $a Ponferrada Castle (Ponferrada,
      Spain)
```

Omit this 410 since → 410 2# \$a Ponferrada, Castillo de (Ponferrada,  
the first 410 begins Spain)  
with the same word.

**b. Broader terms.** Consult recent subject authority records whose references have been evaluated to determine patterns for the appropriate 5XX (broader term) field to add for [*type of structure*]. In late 1984, the implementation of new policies for creating BTs resulted in many changes in reference patterns for named buildings, structures, etc. The most significant of these are listed below.

*Note: For information on the geographic subdivision used in broader term references for structures (shown by the notation [place] in the examples below), see H 375.*

**Public buildings.** The broader term **Public buildings**–[place] is made only for those public buildings for which it is not possible to construct a broader term [*specific type of building*]–[place] because their only function is to house government offices.

## H 1334 Buildings and Other Structures

### 4. References.

#### *b. Broader terms. (Continued)*

**Bridges.** Make the broader term **Bridges**–[*country, or first order political division*]. The construction type of the bridge, for example, **Suspension bridges**, is not brought out as a broader term. The body of water the bridge spans is not brought out as a broader term.

**Dwellings.** The broader term **Architecture, Domestic**–[*place*] is no longer made. Instead, **Architecture, Domestic**–[*place*] is assigned as a heading to architectural studies of a particular dwelling. Because of the subjective nature of determining what is a mansion, use **Dwellings**–[*place*] rather than **Mansions**–[*place*] for dwellings that may be described as mansions.

**Official residences of heads of government or other officials.** Two broader terms are added: **Official residences**–[*place*] and [*type of head of government or official*]–**Dwellings**–[*place*].

**Historic buildings.** Do not add a broader term **Historic buildings**–[*place*]. Instead add a broader term [*specific type of building*]–[*place*].

**Temporary exhibition buildings.** Add a broader term **Exhibition buildings**–[*place*]. Do not add a broader term from the name heading for the exhibition.

**5. Building details.** Enter a named building detail that forms a part of the basic fabric of a building directly under its name. Use as a qualifier the name of the building, generally followed by a comma and the geographic location of the building. Examples of this type of detail are windows, doors, portals, domes, rooms. Establish a heading only if the detail is named. If a work discusses a part of a building that is not named, assign the appropriate generic heading and the heading for the name of the building instead.

## Comics and Comic Characters H 1430

**BACKGROUND:** *For works that consist of selections from a comic strip or single panel cartoon, as well as for works about a comic strip or cartoon, it is descriptive cataloging policy to provide an added entry for the title of the strip or cartoon when that title differs from the title of the work being cataloged, and to justify the added entry by means of a note if necessary. Descriptive catalogers are responsible for establishing these headings. It is subject cataloging policy to assign a genre/form term to selections from a comic strip or single-panel cartoon, and to graphic novels; headings to bring out their subject content are assigned only in limited circumstances, as described below. Subject headings are routinely assigned only to works about such strips or cartoons, or about graphic novels.*

*This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning genre/form headings and subject headings to represent the content of graphic novels and selections from strips and cartoons; and also for assigning subject headings to works about individual comic strips, single panel cartoons, and comic characters. For classification of comic books and graphic novels, see F 565.*

### **1. Graphic novels, comic strips, and single panel cartoons.**

**a. Selections of comic strips or cartoons and original works of fiction, including graphic novels.** Assign one of two genre/form headings in a 655 field: **Comic books, strips, etc.**, or **Graphic novels**. Consider to be a comic book:

- A collection or selection of comic strips or cartoons;
- A comic book cataloged as a serial; or,
- Selected issues of serial comics that have been collected and republished as monographs.

Consider to be a graphic novel any work created specifically for the publication in hand and that is complete, or intended to be complete, in one or more volumes.

In case of doubt, assign **Comic books, strips, etc.**

Assign subject headings according to the following guidelines, which follow general principles for fiction presented in H1790, sec. 4.

**(1) Biographical fiction.** Assign the heading [*name of biographee*]-**Comic books, strips, etc.**

## H 1430 Comics and Comic Characters

### 1. *Graphic novels, comic strips, and single panel cartoons.*

#### *a. Selections of comic strips or cartoons and original works of fiction, including graphic novels. (Continued)*

(2) *Historical fiction.* Assign the headings for specific historical events, periods, etc., with the subdivision –**Comic books, strips, etc.**, e.g. **World War, 1939-1945–Comic books, strips, etc.**, **San Francisco Earthquake and Fire, Calif., 1906–Comic books, strips, etc.**

Do not assign a heading of this type when the event or period is merely the backdrop of the story. Assign it only when the event or period is the principal focus of the work.

Interpret the term **historical fiction** broadly to include works about entities such as movements, corporate bodies or other jurisdictions, camps, parks, structures, geographical features other than regions, ethnic groups, disasters, categories of events, etc.

(3) *Animal stories.* Assign the heading **Animals–Comic books, strips, etc.** to individual works about animals in general. For a work about a specific type of animal, assign a heading for the type of animal with the subdivision –**Comic books, strips, etc.**, e.g. **Horses–Comic books, strips, etc.**

(4) *Assignment of additional form headings.* When using –**Comic books, strips, etc.** as a form subdivision, do not add or interpose other form subdivisions. The form subdivision –**Comic books, strips, etc.** denotes both fiction and non-fiction works.

*b. Works about graphic novels, comic strips or cartoons.* Assign the authorized heading for a graphic novel, comic strip or single panel cartoon to works about such cartoons. Do not use the subdivision –**History and criticism.**

### 2. *Comic characters.*

*a. Establishing headings for individual characters.* Establish new headings for individual characters in graphic novels, comic strips or single panel cartoons under their names with the qualifier (**Fictitious character**), for example, **Snoopy (Fictitious character)**. See H 1610 for detailed instructions.



## Comics and Comic Characters H 1430

### 2. *Comic characters.* (Continued)

**b. Assignment of headings for individual characters.** Assign such headings to works of criticism about a particular comic or cartoon character. If appropriate, assign also the heading for the strip or cartoon itself. Do not use the subdivision –**History and criticism**. Do not assign headings for individual characters to fictional works featuring the character.

**3. Nonfiction written in comic book or graphic novel style.** Assign the appropriate subject heading array. Subdivide each heading by –**Comic books, strips, etc.**

### 4. *Examples.*

*Title: Superman, Batman.*

*[selected issues of a comic serial republished as a monograph]*

655 #0 \$a Comic books, strips, etc.

*Title: Wonder Woman annual.*

655 #0 \$a Comic books, strips, etc.

*Title: Garfield chews the fat.*

*[selections from the comic strip]*

655 #0 \$a Comic books, strips, etc.

*Title: The white lama.*

*[original work complete in six volumes]*

655 #0 \$a Graphic novels.

*Title: The battle of the Alamo.*

*[nonfiction work about the Alamo]*

651 #0 \$a Alamo (San Antonio, Texas) \$x Siege, 1836 \$v Comic books, strips, etc.

## H 1430 Comics and Comic Characters

### 4. *Examples.* (Continued)

*Title: Peanuts : a golden celebration : the art and story of the world's best-loved comic strip.*

600 10 \$a Schulz, Charles M. \$t Peanuts.

*Title: Webslinger : unauthorized essays on your friendly neighborhood Spider-Man.*  
[work of history and criticism]

650 #0 \$a Spider-Man (Fictitious character)

## Guidebooks H 1645

**BACKGROUND:** The subdivision –**Guidebooks** is used as a free-floating form subdivision for handbooks for travelers, sightseers, etc., containing information about routes, facilities and accommodations, items of interest, etc., that is, "how to get there and what to see and do" information. The related subdivision –**Tours** is used as a free-floating subdivision for works providing planned itineraries. For use of the subdivision –**Description and travel**, see H 1530.

**1. General rule.** Use –**Guidebooks** under appropriate subject headings for works containing information of interest to persons en route or in the field.

Use the subdivision only under subjects that have a connotation of place within them, thus allowing for the possibility of travel and viewing. For example, the subdivision may not be used under a discipline such as **Economics** since it has no connotation of place. It may, however be used under a heading such as **Geology** for field guides to particular places.

Some works called "guides" may actually be representative of other forms of publications. If the "guide" is simply a textbook on a topic, no form subdivision is needed (cf. H 2187). If it is a reference work, the subdivision –**Handbooks, manuals, etc.** may be applicable (cf. H 1646). If it is a work describing methods for gaining practical experience through first-hand observation and collection of data, the subdivision –**Field work** may be appropriate.

**2. Types of authorized headings.** Use –**Guidebooks** under the following types of headings:

- Place names, and named geographic entities such as parks, archaeological sites, etc. Types of lands, land uses, geographic features, etc., such as gardens, resorts, refuges, trails, rivers, etc.
- Structures, buildings, institutions, including both named entities and types of the same. Types of architecture.
- Activities involving travel in the field, for example, agriculture, backpacking, bird watching, geology, hiking, mountaineering, viticulture, fishing, etc.
- Art and antiquities, including specific art genres.
- Classes of persons and ethnic groups followed by the subdivision –**Travel** (*May Subd Geog*).

## H 1645 Guidebooks

**3. Place names.** Use the subdivision –**Guidebooks** directly following a particular place name.

*Examples:*

651 #0 \$a Baltimore (Md.) \$v Guidebooks.  
651 #0 \$a Hawaii \$v Guidebooks.  
651 #0 \$a Blue Ridge Mountains \$v Guidebooks.

**4. Named entities.** Use –**Guidebooks** directly under the name of the individual entity for guides to named parks, reserves, roads, battlefields, institutions, and other named lands. *Examples:*

651 #0 \$a Yellowstone National Park \$v Guidebooks.  
651 #0 \$a Martin's Hundred Site (Va.) \$v Guidebooks.  
610 20 \$a Library of Congress \$v Guidebooks.  
610 20 \$a Harvard University \$v Guidebooks.

**5. Topical headings.** When using –**Guidebooks** under locally subdivided topical headings, make an additional entry, also subdivided by –**Guidebooks**, either under the corresponding place name, or under the entity, such as a park, used as the local subdivision. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Cemeteries \$z New England \$v Guidebooks.  
651 #0 \$a New England \$v Guidebooks.

650 #0 \$a Lakes \$z California \$z Sierra National Forest \$v Guidebooks.  
651 #0 \$a Sierra National Forest (Calif.) \$v Guidebooks.

650 #0 \$a White-water canoeing \$z Québec (Province) \$v Guidebooks.  
651 #0 \$a Québec (Province) \$v Guidebooks.

650 #0 \$a Mountaineering \$z Colorado \$z Rocky Mountain National Park \$v Guidebooks.  
651 #0 \$a Rocky Mountain National Park (Colo.) \$v Guidebooks.

650 #0 \$a Historic buildings \$z Pennsylvania \$z Philadelphia \$v Guidebooks.  
651 #0 \$a Philadelphia (Pa.) \$v Guidebooks.  
651 #0 \$a Philadelphia (Pa.) \$x Buildings, structures, etc. \$v Guidebooks.

650 #0 \$a Painting \$z France \$z Paris \$v Guidebooks.  
651 #0 \$a Paris (France) \$v Guidebooks.

## Contents of Volume Four

### *Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, Etc.*

<i>H 1910</i>	Miscellanea
<i>H 1913</i>	Moving Image Genre/Form Headings
<i>H 1916</i>	Museums
<i>H 1916.3</i>	Music: General
<i>H 1916.5</i>	Music: Jazz and Popular Music
<i>H 1917</i>	Music of Ethnic, National, and Religious Groups
<i>H 1917.5</i>	Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium of Performance
<i>H 1918</i>	Musical Instruments
<i>H 1919</i>	Name and Names
<i>H 1919.5</i>	Nationalities
<i>H 1920</i>	Newspapers on Special Topics and Ethnic Newspapers
<i>H 1925</i>	Parks, Reserves, National Monuments, Etc.
<i>H 1927</i>	Periodicals
<i>H 1928</i>	Personal Narratives
<i>H 1929</i>	Philosophy
<i>H 1935</i>	Pictorial Works
<i>H 1942</i>	Politics and Government
<i>H 1943.5</i>	Popular Works
<i>H 1945</i>	Postage Stamps on Specific Topics
<i>H 1945.5</i>	Posters
<i>H 1949</i>	Professional Ethics
<i>H 1955</i>	Public Opinion
<i>H 1965</i>	Publishers' Catalogs
<i>H 1969</i>	Quotations and Maxims
<i>H 1970</i>	Railroads
<i>H 1975</i>	Readers
<i>H 1980</i>	Reference Books
<i>H 1995</i>	Regimental Histories
<i>H 1996</i>	Relations and Military Relations
<i>H 1997</i>	Religion
<i>H 1998</i>	Religious Aspects of Topics
<i>H 2015</i>	Religious Denominations or Religions as Subdivisions
<i>H 2015.5</i>	Religious Life
<i>H 2016</i>	Religious Life and Customs
<i>H 2020</i>	Research
<i>H 2021</i>	Reviews
<i>H 2032</i>	Sermons
<i>H 2040</i>	Simulation Methods in Special Fields
<i>H 2055</i>	Social Conditions

## Contents of Volume Four

### *Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, Etc.*

<i>H 2057</i>	Social Life and Customs
<i>H 2060</i>	Societies
<i>H 2070</i>	Software and Works about Software
<i>H 2075</i>	Songs and Music
<i>H 2080</i>	Sources
<i>H 2083</i>	Specifications
<i>H 2095</i>	Statistics
<i>H 2098</i>	Streets and Roads
<i>H 2100</i>	Strikes and Lockouts
<i>H 2110</i>	Study and Teaching
<i>H 2145</i>	Supplementary Works
<i>H 2149</i>	Surveys
<i>H 2160</i>	Tables
<i>H 2184</i>	Terms and Phrases
<i>H 2185</i>	Territories and Possessions
<i>H 2186</i>	Testing
<i>H 2187</i>	Textbooks
<i>H 2190</i>	Texts
<i>H 2217</i>	Training
<i>H 2219</i>	Translating
<i>H 2220</i>	Translations
<i>H 2225</i>	Transportation
<i>H 2227</i>	Treaties
<i>H 2228</i>	Trials
<i>H 2230</i>	Visual Materials and Non-Music Sound Recordings
<i>H 2232</i>	Vocational Guidance
<i>H 2400</i>	Yearbooks

### *Glossary*

<i>Appendix A</i>	Abbreviations
<i>Appendix B</i>	Capitalization
<i>Appendix C</i>	Diacritics and Special Characters
<i>Appendix D</i>	Punctuation

### *Update Information*

### *Index*

## Moving Image Genre/Form Headings H 1913

**BACKGROUND:** Moving image works are defined as those created by recording moving visual images, with or without sound. Individual moving image works are usually cataloged in the Motion Picture/Broadcasting/Recorded Sound Division (M/B/RS) of the Library of Congress. This instruction sheet provides special guidelines for the assignment of genre/form headings to works cataloged by M/B/RS. For guidelines on assigning subject headings to bring out the content of individual moving image works, see H 2230.

*Note:* As used in this instruction sheet and in the genre/form headings themselves, the term **films** refers to works that are originally recorded and released on motion picture film, on video, or digitally. The phrase **television programs** refers to those works that are originally telecast.

### 1. Assignment of genre/form headings.

**a. General rule.** Assign genre/form headings to both fiction and nonfiction works. Headings may be assigned from different levels of the same hierarchy if desired.

**b. Limiting to fiction or non-fiction.** Also assign one of the headings in the following list to each work to distinguish between fiction and nonfiction treatments of a subject:

Fiction films  
Nonfiction films  
Fiction television programs  
Nonfiction television programs

*Examples:*

*Title: Till the clouds roll by.*  
655 #0 \$a Biographical films.  
655 #0 \$a Fiction films.

*Title: Survivor : Thailand.*  
655 #0 \$a Survival television programs.  
655 #0 \$a Nonfiction television programs.

## H 1913 Moving Image Genre/Form Headings

### *1. Assignment of genre/form headings.*

#### *b. Limiting to fiction or non-fiction.*

*Examples: (Continued)*

*Title: Harlan County, U.S.A.*  
655 #0 \$a Documentary films.  
655 #0 \$a Nonfiction films.

*c. Short films or Feature films.* Additionally, for motion pictures assign either **Short films** or **Feature films** as appropriate. Short films are defined as those running less than 40 minutes, and feature films are full-length films running 40 minutes or longer.

*d. Multiple genres.* Assign as many genre/form headings as necessary to bring out important forms and genres to which the work belongs. *Example:*

*Title: The Wizard of Oz*  
655 #0 \$a Musical films.  
655 #0 \$a Fantasy films.  
655 #0 \$a Children's films.  
655 #0 \$a Film adaptations.  
655 #0 \$a Fiction films.  
655 #0 \$a Feature films.

#### *e. Moving image works for people with disabilities.*

(1) *Hearing impaired.* Assign one of three headings to moving-image works produced with captions or sign language for viewing by the hearing impaired: **Films for the hearing impaired**, **Television programs for the hearing impaired**, or **Video recordings for the hearing impaired**.

Do not assign this heading to works in one language with subtitles in another language if the subtitles are intended only as a translation, and not specifically as an aid for the hearing impaired.

(2) *Visually impaired.* Assign one of three headings to moving-image works with additional audio description provided for people with visual disabilities: **Films for people with visual disabilities**, **Television programs for people with visual disabilities**, or **Video recordings for people with visual disabilities**.



## Moving Image Genre/Form Headings H 1913

### 2. Construction of headings.

*a. General rule.* All genre/form headings must be established. For general guidelines on the creation of subject authority records, see H 200.

#### *b. Form of heading.*

*(1) Use of terms already in LCSH.* Before proposing a new genre/form heading, search LCSH to determine whether there is a topical subject heading that is appropriate for use as a genre/form heading. If there is, propose that the new genre/form heading be identical to the topical heading.

*Example:* The work in hand is a recording of a television interview. The topical term **Interviews** exists in LCSH and can be proposed for use as a genre/form heading. (The additional genre/form heading **Nonfiction television programs** may be added to the bibliographic record to bring out the format of the work.)

*(2) Construction of new headings.* Create separate headings for film and television genres and forms. Prefer the formulas [. . .] **films** and [. . .] **television programs**, although headings of the type **Film** [. . .] or **Television** [. . .] may also be proposed if appropriate. If neither of the above two options is practical (e.g., due to common usage or literary warrant), then headings may be constructed by using the qualifiers (**Motion pictures**) or (**Television programs**). *Examples:*

```
155 ## $a Horror films
155 ## $a Film adaptations
155 ## $a Rushes (Motion pictures)
155 ## $a Horror television programs
155 ## $a Television adaptations
155 ## $a Variety shows (Television programs)
```

*c. References.* Construct references according to the following guidelines, which follow the general principles for references presented in H 370.

## H 1913 Moving Image Genre/Form Headings

### 2. Construction of headings.

#### c. References. (continued)

(1) **Used for references.** Add 455 fields for variant terminology and/or different forms of heading.

(2) **Broader term references.** Judiciously add broader term references for explicit class/class member relationships. Genre/form headings without broader terms are permissible. *Examples:*

```
155 ## $a Romantic comedy films
555 ## $w g $a Comedy films
```

```
155 ## $a Cinéma vérité films
555 ## $w g $a Documentary films
```

[*but* 155 ## \$a Buddy films ]

(3) **Related term references.** Link through related term references those terms with meanings that overlap to some extent, or that are used somewhat interchangeably.

```
155 ## $a Disaster films
555 ## $a Survival films
```

```
155 ## $a Survival films
555 ## $a Disaster films
```

d. **Scope notes.** Add a scope note to define the meaning of the genre/form heading if necessary. Consult H 400 for guidance.

```
155 ## $a Social guidance films
680 ## $i Here are entered films designed to guide people,
usually teenagers, in proper behavior, dating,
etiquette, and other social interaction.
```

## Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium H 1917.5 of Performance

**2. Solo instruments in headings: Order of solo instruments.** Assign the names of solo instruments in the following order: (1) keyboard instruments, (2) wind instruments, (3) plucked instruments, (4) percussion, electronic, and other instruments, (5) bowed stringed instruments, (6) unspecified instruments, and (7) continuo. Within each numbered category, give the instruments in alphabetical order with the exception of bowed stringed instruments: give these in score order, high to low, basing the order on the range of each instrument as described in standard music reference sources.

Do not include more than 9 instruments or 9 soloists in a heading, counting all categories. If the solo group is larger than 9, use an appropriate heading that incorporates the term “ensemble” (cf. sec. 5).

### *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Clarinet, flute, violin, violoncello with chamber orchestra.  
650 #0 \$a Flute and violin music.  
650 #0 \$a Concertos (Piano, saxophone, double bass with instrumental ensemble)  
650 #0 \$a Nonets (Bassoon, clarinet, flute, horn, oboe, violin, viola, violoncello, double bass)  
650 #0 \$a Octets (Piano, clarinet, flute, guitar, mandolin, accordion, percussion, double bass)  
650 #0 \$a Piano, horn, glockenspiel, xylophone with orchestra  
650 #0 \$a Pianos (2), celesta, percussion, synthesizer with chamber orchestra  
650 #0 \$a Quartets (Flute, violin, viola, continuo)  
650 #0 \$a Sonatas (Flute and violin)  
650 #0 \$a Suites (Flute, harp, vibraphone, violoncello)  
650 #0 \$a Quartets (Pianos (3), computer)  
650 #0 \$a Quartets (Clarinet, flute, computer, double bass)  
650 #0 \$a Septets (Electronics, percussion)  
650 #0 \$a String quintets (Violin, viola d'amore, viola, violoncello, violone)  
650 #0 \$a Trios (Piano (4 hands), reed organ)  
650 #0 \$a Variations (Organ and piano)

For the order of solo instruments when there are two, one of which is chordal, see sec. 3 and sec. 6.

## H 1917.5 Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium of Performance

### 2. *Solo instruments in headings: Order of solo instruments.* (Continued)

For guidelines on headings for two or more solo instruments combined with a term for an accompanying ensemble, see sec. 5.

### 3. *Solo instruments in headings: Combinations of two different instruments or of one unspecified and one specified instrument.*

*a. Standard order.* Follow the general guidelines in sec. 2. Create an authority record for the combination; provide a reference with the instruments in reverse order. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Bassoon and flute music
450 ## $a Flute and bassoon music

150 ## $a Sitar and tabla music
450 ## $a Tabla and sitar music
```

*b. One unspecified instrument.* In headings for works where one of the instruments is unspecified, establish the heading beginning with the term **Duets**. Provide references with both of the other possible ways of expressing the combination. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Duets (Unspecified instrument and piano)
450 ## $a Duets (Piano and unspecified instrument)
450 ## $a Piano and unspecified instrument music
```

*c. Chordal instruments; accompanying instrument.* For Western music performed entirely on Western instruments, and optionally for one Western and one non-Western instrument, if one of the instruments is chordal (keyboard or plucked instruments, on which chords are easily played), or if one serves as an accompaniment to the other, give the chordal or accompanying instrument in the *second* position. *Examples:*

#### *1 chordal instrument as accompaniment:*

```
150 ## $a Trombone and piano music
450 ## $a Piano and trombone music
```

#### *2 chordal instruments, the second as accompaniment:*

```
150 ## $a Mandolin and piano music
450 ## $a Piano and mandolin music
```

## Musical Instruments H 1918

**BACKGROUND:** *This instruction sheet provides guidance in the establishment and use of headings for the names of musical instruments and families of instruments. For free-floating subdivisions used with headings for musical instruments see H 1161. For musical instruments as the medium of performance in form/genre headings for musical compositions, see H 1917.5.*

### 1. Establishing headings.

**a. General guidelines.** Establish names of musical instruments, parts of instruments, accessories, and families of instruments. Use the standard term in English. Omit the key of an instrument, as in "D" trumpet, from its heading, but include the range if the generic heading does not represent that particular pitch or range of the instrument. When establishing a heading for the instrument, also establish a heading for music of the instrument, which authorizes the instrument to be used in bibliographic records as a medium of performance. Include in that proposal a see also reference that incorporates the plural if there is one, and a scope note. If information about whether a foreign term (see sec. 1.a.(1), below) lacks a plural is unavailable, formulate a plural according to the practice for English.

*Examples:*

150 ## \$a Flute

150 ## \$a Flute music

360 ## \$i headings for forms and types of music that include "flute" or "flutes" and headings with medium of performance that include "flute" or "flutes"

680 ## \$i Here are entered compositions not in a specific form or of a specific type for solo flute, and collections of compositions in several forms or types for solo flute.

150 ## \$a Clarinet *[used for the E flat, A, and B flat clarinets but not the bass clarinet]*

150 ## \$a Bass clarinet

150 ## \$a Saxophone *[used for the soprano, alto, tenor, and baritone saxophones]*

*Exception:* Do not establish a heading for music of a brand or model number of an instrument. Brands and models of instruments may not be used as a medium of performance in headings for musical works (see below, sec. 5.c).

# H 1918 Musical Instruments

## 1. Establishing headings.

### a. General guidelines. (Continued)

(1) *Foreign terms.* If there is no standard term in English, establish the heading using a foreign term, in accordance with H 315. If the name of the instrument is not unique to the language of the item being cataloged, use the term found in a source in the language of the place where the instrument is played. For terms in non-Roman scripts, use a romanized form. If a romanized form appears in a standard English language source, prefer that form and make a UF reference if necessary from the spelling that would result using the designated romanization scheme for that language.

*Exception:* Use pinyin romanization for terms in Chinese.

*Examples:*

150 ## \$a Oboe d'amore

150 ## \$a Oboe d'amore music

360 ## \$i headings for forms and types of music that include "oboe d'amore" or "oboi d'amore" and headings with medium of performance that include "oboe d'amore" or "oboi d'amore"

680 ## \$i Here are entered compositions not in a specific form or of a specific type for solo oboe d'amore, and collections of compositions in several forms or types for solo oboe d'amore.

150 ## \$a Er hu

150 ## \$a Er hu music

360 ## \$i headings for forms and types of music that include "er hu" and headings with medium of performance that include "er hu"

680 ## \$i Here are entered compositions not in a specific form or of a specific type for er hu, and collections of compositions in several forms or types for solo er hu.

## Nationalities H 1919.5

**BACKGROUND:** Until 1981, headings for nationalities living in specific places outside their native country were formulated as **[nationality] in [place]**; a nationality living in several countries was expressed as **[nationality] in foreign countries**. Headings of the type **[nationality] in [place]** and **[nationality] in foreign countries** have been converted to **[topic]–[place]**. The geographic subdivision **–Foreign countries** has replaced the phrase **[ . . . ] in foreign countries**. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for establishing and assigning headings for nationalities.

### 1. General procedures.

**a. Establishing headings for nationalities.** Establish nationality headings according to the following model:

```
150 ## $a [nationality]
450 ## $a [variant form(s), if any]
550 ## $w g $a Ethnology $z [country of origin]
```

Provide for geographic subdivision of these headings by selecting the value **i** in field 008/06 (the box labeled **Subdivision** on the 008 input screen in the LC ILS).

*Example:*

```
150 ## $a Canadians
550 ## $w g $a Ethnology $z Canada
```

**b. Use of geographic subdivision.** These headings are used only to designate the presence of nationalities *outside* their native countries. Therefore, they are never assigned without local subdivision. Whenever a nationality heading is assigned, further subdivide it by the place where the presence of the nationality is being discussed, for example, **German–Brazil**.

With the exception of American ethnic groups, specific nationalities in foreign countries are designated in this manner, rather than by composite names such as **German Brazilians**.

*Note: Do not confuse this type of prohibited composite nationality name with names for true ethnic groups, i.e. groups with a common cultural and linguistic heritage, whose names are by chance in composite form, such as **French-Canadians**.*

## H 1919.5 Nationalities

### 1. *General procedures.* (Continued)

*c. Nationalities within their own countries.* Do not use nationality headings for works that discuss the people of a country actually residing within that country. Instead, use either the name of the country with an appropriate subdivision, a [*topic*]-[*place*] heading, or a combination of both. *Examples:*

651 #0 \$a United States \$x Social life and customs.  
[not 650 #0 \$a Americans \$x Social life and customs.]

650 #0 \$a Anthropometry \$z Sweden.  
[not 650 #0 \$a Swedes \$x Anthropometry.]

*d. Ethnic group subdivisions under nationality headings.* Within the restrictions of sec. 1.c., above, treat nationality headings as ethnic groups, assigning subdivisions used under ethnic groups when appropriate, for example, **Iranians–France–Economic conditions** (cf. H 1103).

*e. Position of geographic subdivision.* When using, under a nationality heading, a subdivision that is itself further subdivided by place, assign the geographic subdivision as the final element, for example, **French–Employment–Germany**.

*f. Nationalities in more than one foreign country.* For works that discuss a specific nationality in several countries, use the subdivision **–Foreign countries** under the appropriate nationality heading. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Italians \$z Foreign countries.  
650 #0 \$a Americans \$x Employment \$z Foreign countries.

*Note:* The subdivision **–Foreign countries** is free-floating when used under nationality headings.



## Parks, Reserves, National Monuments, Etc. H 1925

**BACKGROUND:** Most of the provisions for formulating and qualifying geographic names, presented in H 690 and H 810, apply also to names of parks. There are certain aspects of parks, however, that require special provisions not applicable to other types of geographic features. This instruction sheet presents these special provisions for formulating, qualifying, and providing references for names of parks. It also discusses various special provisions for assigning names of parks, and entities within parks, as subject headings. For instructions on constructing and assigning headings for regions based on geographic features, including parks, see H 760.

The term **park** is used in this instruction sheet in the generic sense to include the following types of entities:

Public and private parks of any type  
Nature conservation areas, natural areas, natural history reservations, nature reserves  
Wild areas, wilderness areas, roadless areas  
Forest reserves and preserves  
Seashores, marine parks and reserves, wild and scenic rivers  
Wildlife refuges, bird reservations and sanctuaries, game ranges and preserves, wildlife management areas  
Historic sites, national monuments, etc.  
Indian reservations and reserves  
Amusement parks  
Gardens  
Trails, etc.

Until 2005, headings for entities of the above types were established as subject headings tagged **151** unless they were needed as descriptive access points. In the latter case, they were established as name headings but followed subject cataloging conventions as to the tagging and form of the headings. Beginning in 2005, a new practice was adopted. A heading for a park as a physical entity is now established only as a subject heading, never as a name heading. It is tagged **151** and qualified according to the provisions in this instruction sheet. A heading that is needed as a descriptive access point for a park as a corporate entity is established as a separate name heading, tagged **110** and qualified by the term (**Agency**) and further geographic qualifier if needed. For example, the following pairs of headings could potentially exist:

Subject heading: 151 ## Yellowstone National Park  
Name heading: 110 2# Yellowstone National Park (Agency : U.S.)

Subject heading: 151 ## Yosemite National Park (Calif.)  
Name heading: 110 2# Yosemite National Park (Agency : U.S.)

## H 1925 Parks, Reserves, National Monuments, Etc.

### **BACKGROUND:** (Continued)

*The subject heading is never valid for use as a name heading, but the name heading is valid for use either as a name heading or as a subject heading that may be assigned to a work that is about the agency that administers the park.*

### **1. Establishing headings for parks.**

**a. Formulating the heading.** Establish a heading for a park directly under its own name in the vernacular of the country in which it is located, unless the park is so well known that it appears in a conventional English form in most English-language reference sources. Use the form of name found to be in predominant usage after doing authority research. If the vernacular form cannot be found in the work cataloged or in readily available reference sources, establish the heading "provisionally," as described in H 1334, sec. 2.d.(3). Qualify the heading in accordance with the general rules for qualifying geographic features (see H 810). Tag the heading **151**.

**National parks.** If, according to the above guidelines, a heading for a nationally owned and administered park or reserve is to be established in the vernacular, establish it in the vernacular of the country as a whole, even if it is located in a republic or province where another language prevails. If the country recognizes more than one official language, and one of them is English, establish the park in English. For example, establish Canadian national parks located in Québec in English rather than French.

**Wilderness areas.** Establish headings for wilderness areas in the form [...] **Wilderness** (*geographic qualifier*).

2. *Exceptions to the general rules. (Continued)*

*e. Photography.* For works on photography containing reproductions of photographs where the focus is on their photographic aspect, assign headings of the type **Photography**; **Photography, Artistic**; **Nature photography**; **Photography of food**. See H 1255 for instructions on artistic photography.

*f. Scientific and technical atlases.* For scientific or technical works consisting of comprehensive, often systematically arranged, collections of illustrative plates, charts, etc., usually with explanatory captions, use the subdivision –**Atlases** under topics, for example, **Human anatomy–Atlases**.

*g. Films, video recordings, filmstrips, etc.* Do not use –**Pictorial works** as a form subdivision for such materials. Assign no form subdivision to adult moving image materials; assign –**Juvenile films** to juvenile materials.

*h. Photographs.* For works consisting of actual photographs, that is, photographic prints or digital photographs, rather than reproductions of photographs, use the subdivision –**Photographs** under subjects. For aerial photographs, see H 1210.5. For works consisting of slides, use the subdivision –**Slides**.

3. *Examples.*

*Title: Costume : an illustrated survey from ancient times to the twentieth century.*  
[includes text]

650 #0 \$a Costume \$x History.  
650 #0 \$a Costume \$x History \$v Pictorial works.

*Title: Aspects of Boston. [includes text with separate pictorial section]*

651 #0 \$a Boston (Mass.) \$v Pictorial works.  
651 #0 \$a Boston (Mass.) \$x History.

*Title: In praise of Australian birds.*

650 #0 \$a Birds \$z Australia \$v Pictorial works.

*Title: A Yosemite album.*

651 #0 \$a Yosemite National Park (Calif.) \$v Pictorial works.

## H 1935 Pictorial Works

### 3. Examples. (Continued)

*Title: Picture panorama of British history.*

651 #0 \$a Great Britain \$x History \$v Pictorial  
works \$v Juvenile literature.

*Title: Pompéi : résurrection d'une cité.*

651 #0 \$a Pompeii (Extinct city) \$v Pictorial works.

*Title: London : a picture-book to remember her by.*

651 #0 \$a London (England) \$v Pictorial works.

*Title: Australia, colourful continent.*

651 #0 \$a Australia \$v Pictorial works.

Ancient jurisdictions (other than cities)

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (3, 6)

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Ancient peoples

Assigning headings: H 1225 (2)

Civilizations: H 1370 (2)

**and**

In music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (26-27)

[ . . . ] **and** [ . . . ] headings: H 310

Broader terms: H 370 (7)

Religion headings: H 1998 (5-6)

[ . . . ] **and state**

*SEE* **Government policy** as a subdivision

**Anecdotes** as a subdivision

Pets: H 1720 (2)

Animals

*SEE ALSO* Domestic animals

[ . . . ] as [ . . . ] headings: H 360

Assigning classification numbers: H 1332 (5)

Assigning headings for fictional works: H 1790 (3)

Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*: H 1332 (5)

Geographic subdivision allowed at any taxonomic level: H 1332 (5)

–**Legends and stories** not used: H 1627 (4), H 1720 (1)

Pattern heading: H 1147

Subdivisions for legends and stories: H 1720

Subject heading proposals: H 1332 (1-5)

Individual animals with proper names: H 1332 (6-7)

Annotated bibliographies

Distinguished from collections of abstracts: H 1205 (2)

Antarctica

As geographic qualifier: H 810 (1)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7)

**Antiquities** as a subdivision: H 1225

Not used under extinct cities: H 715 (3)

Apartment houses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

**Apologetic works** as a subdivision: H 1472 (1)

Appendices: H 2145

**Appropriations and expenditures** as a subdivision: H 1624 (1)

Aquariums, Public

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Aqueducts

Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

**Arab** as a qualifier: H 1223

**Arab countries:** H 1223  
**Arabian** as qualifier: H 1223  
**Arabic** as a qualifier: H 1223  
 Arabic subject headings: H 181  
 Arboretums  
     Established as name headings: H 405 (5)  
**Archaeological collections** as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)  
 Archaeological periods and cultures: H 1225 (2)  
 Archaeological sites  
     Assigning subject headings: H 1225 (1)  
     Contrasted with extinct cities: H 715 (3)  
     Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)  
     Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)  
     Subject heading proposals: H 1225 (3-4)  
 Archaeological works  
     Assigning subject headings: H 1225  
     Specific named peoples: H 1225 (2)  
 Arches  
     Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)  
**Archival resources** as a subdivision: H 1230 (2-3)  
**Archives** as a subdivision: H 1230  
     Manuscript catalogs: H 1361 (5)  
 Area studies: H 2110 (2)  
 Arenas  
     Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)  
 Aristocratic families  
     Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (3-4)  
 Armed forces  
     Pattern heading: H 1159  
     Regimental histories: H 1995  
 Armenia (Republic): H 1023 (2-4)  
 Armories  
     Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)  
**Arranged** as a qualifier of music form/genre headings: H 250 (5), H 1160 (1-2), H 1917.5 (15-16)  
 Art  
     Historical periods: H 1250 (4-5)  
     Pattern heading: H 1148  
     Qualifiers for art headings: H 306 (3), H 1250 (2-6)  
     Single works of art: H 1250 (12)  
     Style: H 1250 (5,10)  
     Works of art by a single artist: H 1250 (10-11)  
     Works of art by more than one artist: H 1250 (2-10)  
**Art, Chinese**  
     Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1148

**Catalogs and collections** as a subdivision

Musical instruments: H 1360 (3), H 1427 (1-2)

Natural objects: H 1360 (3), H 1427 (2-3)

Use of geographic subdivision for location of collection: H 1427 (1)

**Catalogs** as a subdivision: H 1360

Archives: H 1230 (2), H 1361 (5)

Collections of objects: H 1360, H 1427 (2), H 1670 (3)

Library materials: H 1361

Manuscript collections: H 1361 (4-6)

Source materials: H 2080 (5)

Catalogs of manuscript collections: H 1361 (4-6)

Categories of headings established as subject or name headings: H 405

**Cathedrals**

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

**Catholic Church**

–**Foreign relations**: H 1629 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1187

**Cattle**

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147

**Cavalry** as a subdivision: H 1159 (2)

**Caves**

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Subject heading proposals: H 1225 (4)

**Celebrations**

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

**Celestial bodies**

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (9)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Subdivisions under places not used: H 1140 (1)

**Cemeteries**: H 1365

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

**Census** as a subdivision: H 1366

**Central, Northern, Southern**, etc., as qualifiers

Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)

**Centuries**: H 620

**Chambers of commerce**

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Changing existing subject headings: H 193

Changing references in subject authority records: H 195

**Chapels**

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Characters, Special  
    *SEE* Special characters

Checklist for authority research on subject heading proposals: H 202 (9)

Checklist for subject heading proposals: H 200 (11)

Chemicals  
    Pattern headings: H 1149

Children's fiction  
    *SEE* Juvenile fiction

Children's films  
    *SEE* Juvenile films

Children's literature  
    *SEE* **Juvenile literature** as a subdivision

Children's plays  
    *SEE* Juvenile drama

Children's poetry  
    *SEE* Juvenile poetry

Children's sound recordings  
    *SEE* Juvenile sound recordings

China: H 925

Chinese subject headings (Non-Roman): H 182

Chorus music headings  
    Construction: H 1917.5 (32-38)

Christian denominations  
    Adjectival qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)  
    –**Apologetic works**: H 1472 (1)  
    Assigning subject headings: H 1187 (1), H 1998, H 2015  
    –**Controversial literature**: H 1472  
    Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405 (6)  
    –**Directories**: H 1558 (2-3)  
    Establishing [*topic*]–**Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]**: H 2015 (2)  
    Establishing [*topic*]–**Religious aspects–Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]**: H 1998 (2-3)  
    Headings naming a denomination's music not assigned: H 1917 (3)  
    –**Liturgy–Texts**: H 2190 (3)  
    Pattern heading: H 1187

**Christian life**: H 2015.5 (1)

Christian sects  
    *SEE* Christian denominations

Chronological headings: H 620



Chronological subdivisions: H 620, H 1075 (2)  
 Art: H 1148 (2-3)  
 –**Foreign relations**: H 870 (3)  
 –**History**: H 1647 (2-3)  
 Jazz and popular music: H 1916.5 (2-4)  
 Musical compositions: H 1160 (2-3)

**Chronology**: H 1367  
**Chronology** as a subdivision: H 1367

Churches  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Circuses  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Cities  
*SEE ALSO* City parks  
 City sections  
 Extinct cities (pre-1500)  
 Natural features in cities  
 names of specific cities  
 –**Buildings, structures, etc.**: H 832 (1), **H 1334.5**  
 Airports: H 1211  
 Not used as broader term for structures in cities: H 375, H 1334 (1)  
 Cities assigned directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)  
 "City flip" discontinued: H 832 (1)  
 –**Description and travel**: H 1530  
 Disasters, riots, demonstrations, etc.: H 832 (1), **H 1560**  
 Event headings as subdivisions under cities: H 1592 (9)  
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140  
 Geographic qualifiers for entities in cities: H 810 (5)  
 Buildings: H 1334 (4)  
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 832  
 [ . . . ] **Metropolitan Area**: H 362 (1), **H 790** (1-3)  
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)  
 [ . . . ] **Region**: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 4)  
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)  
 [ . . . ] **Suburban Area**: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 3)  
 Subdivisions formerly used under cities: H 832 (2-3)

Citing sources in subject authority records: H 200 (7-8, 17), **H 203**  
 Authority research guidelines: H 202 (3-8)

**Citizen participation** as a subdivision: H 1942 (3)

City districts  
*SEE* City sections

"City flip"  
 Discontinued: **H 832**, H 1560 (1)

City halls: H 1334 (1)  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

City parks  
    *SEE ALSO* Parks  
    Assignment of subject headings: H 1925 (6)  
    Geographic qualifiers: H 810 (5)

City sections: H 720  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (5), H 720 (1)  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140  
    Geographic subdivision: H 720 (2), **H 830 (4)**

City streets  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (13), H 690 (1)  
    Subject heading proposals: H 2098  
    Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)  
    Use of vernacular: H 2098 (1)

Civic centers  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Civil trials: H 2228 (2-3)

Civil wars  
    Pattern heading: H 1200

Civilization: H 1370  
    *SEE ALSO* Ethnic groups  
    Religious sects  
    Ancient peoples  
    Influence of one civilization on another: H 1370 (4)  
    Special civilizations of particular places: H 1370 (3)  
    [*topic*] and civilization: H 1370 (5)  
    Types of civilization: H 1370 (2)

**Civilization as a subdivision:** H 1370 (2-3)  
    Period subdivisions: H 1370 (3)

CJK subject headings: H 182

Clans  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

**Clarinet**  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161

Classes of persons  
    *SEE ALSO* Ancient peoples  
    Ethnic groups  
    Indians  
    Literary authors, Groups of  
    Nationalities  
    [ . . . ] as [ . . . ] headings: H 360

Classes of persons (*Continued*)

Biography: H 1330 (2-4)

Immigrants: H 1581 (3)

Persons with multifaceted careers: H 1330 (3)

–**Correspondence:** H 1480 (2)

–**Diaries:** H 1538

–**Directories:** H 1558 (1)

Ethnic groups as qualifiers: H 351

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1100

[ . . . ] in [ . . . ] headings: H 360

Nationalities as qualifiers: H 350

–**Portraits:** H 1935 (2)

–**Psychological testing:** H 2186

–**Religious life:** H 2015.5 (1-2)

Classical and ancient works: H 1412

**Classification** as a subdivision

Folklore materials: H 1627 (2)

Classification numbers in subject authority records: **H 365**

Adding numbers to new records: H 200 (3, 15)

Biological names: H 1332 (5)

Changing numbers in existing records: H 193 (3), **H 196**

Literature headings: H 365 (2)

Musical instrument headings: H 365 (2), H 1918 (5)

Club houses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Coding headings (*May Subd Geog*), (*Not Subd Geog*), etc.: H 364

**Coin collections** as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Coliseums

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

**Collected works** as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1425

Collections, Public or Private

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

**Collections** as a subdivision: H 1425

Collections of documents: H 1643 (2)

Collections of manuscripts: H 1855 (8, 19-21)

Collections of objects

Assignment of subject headings: H 1427 (2-5)

Catalogs: H 1360, H 1427 (2)

–**Indexes** not used: H 1670 (3)

Partial title added entries for names of collections: H 1427 (3)

Subdivisions for types of collections: H 1427 (1)

Collections of treaties: H 2227 (1-2)

Collective farms  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Collective settlements  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Colleges  
*SEE ALSO* Universities and colleges  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Colonies of individual countries  
*SEE ALSO* **Territories and possessions** as a subdivision  
 Pattern heading: H 1149.5

Comarcas: H 760 (3)

Comets  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Comfort stations, Public  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Comic characters: H 1430  
*SEE ALSO* Fictitious characters

Comic strips: H 1430  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Commas  
*SEE* Punctuation

Commentaries on commentaries: H 1435 (4)

Commentaries on individual works  
 Assignment of subject headings: H 1435 (2-6)  
 Anonymous classics: H 1435 (3)  
 Converting form headings to topical equivalents: H 1435 (5)  
 Sacred works: H 1435 (3)  
 Treatment of a work as an edition or as a commentary: H 1435 (1)  
 Treatment of works consisting of both original text and commentary: H 1435 (6)

**Commercial treaties** as a subdivision: H 2227 (2)

Commonwealth of Independent States: H 1023 (4)

Communes  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Communities, Planned  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Community centers  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Competitions  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Composers: H 1438  
 Biography: H 1438 (1)  
 –**Criticism and interpretation**: H 1438 (1)  
 Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595 (2)

Extinct cities (pre-1500) (*Continued*)  
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140  
Geographic subdivision: H 830 (3)  
Regions surrounding: H 715 (3); H 760 (1)  
Subject heading proposals: H 715  
**(Extinct city)** as a qualifier: H 715 (2, 4)

- F -

Fables: H 1627 (4)  
**Facsimiles** as a subdivision: H 1595, H 1855 (5, 9, 11, 13, 15, 16)  
Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595 (1-2); H 1855  
Facsimiles of maps: H 1595 (2)  
Factories  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (7)  
Fairgrounds  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)  
Fairs  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)  
Fairy tales: H 1627 (4)  
Families  
    *SEE* Family names  
Families, Royal  
    *SEE* Royal houses  
**Family** as a subdivision: H 1631 (6)  
Family history  
    *SEE* Genealogy  
Family names: H 1631  
    Capitalization: Appendix B (5-6)  
    –**Directories**: H 1558 (1)  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120  
    –**Museums, relics, etc.**: H 1916 (2)  
    Subject heading proposals: H 1631 (3-4)  
        Aristocratic or noble families: H 1574 (3-4)  
    Tagging headings in subject authority records: H 200 (4)  
Famines  
    Formulating headings: H 1592  
    Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)  
Farms  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (11), H 690 (1)

Feasts

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

**Feature films:** H 1913 (2)

Federal Republic of Germany

*SEE* Germany

Ferry buildings

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Festivals

Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Festivals, Folk

Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Festschriften: H 1600

Fiction: H 1790

*SEE ALSO* Biographical fiction

Historical fiction

Juvenile fiction

**Fiction** as a subdivision: H 1790

Animals: H 1720 (1)

Place names: H 910 (2)

Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)

Fiction films: H 1913 (1)

Fiction television programs: H 1913 (1)

Fictitious characters: H 1610

*SEE ALSO* Comic characters

Legendary characters

Collections of fiction featuring a character: H 1790 (2)

Criticism of fiction about a character: H 1790 (4)

Establishing individual characters: H 1610 (1-2)

Individual works of fiction: H 1610 (2-3)

**Film catalogs** as a subdivision: H 1361 (3)

Contrasted with **-Indexes:** H 1670 (1)

Films: H 1913; H 2230

*SEE ALSO* Juvenile films

**Finance** as a subdivision: H 1624 (1)

**Finance, Personal** as a subdivision: H 1624 (2)

Fine art

*SEE* Art

Fire stations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Fires

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

First order political divisions of countries  
    *SEE* Geographic name headings—First order political divisions of countries

Fish hatcheries  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

**Fishes**  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147

Fleets  
    Use of **—Regimental histories**: H 1995

Floods  
    Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

**Folk drama**: H 1627 (4)

Folk festivals and celebrations  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Folk literature: H 1627 (1, 4, 5)  
    Translations: H 1627 (5)

**Folk music**: H 1917  
    Music genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

**Folk poetry**  
    Ethnic qualifiers not used: H 1627 (1)  
    Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (1)

**Folk songs**  
    Language of text: H 1916.3 (2,5), H 1917 (1)  
    Music genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

**Folklore**: H 1627  
    Collections of folklore texts: H 1627 (2)  
    **—History and criticism** not used: H 1627 (7)  
    Works about folklore: H 1627 (2)

**Folklore** as a subdivision: **H 1627**, H 1720 (1)  
    Not used under inherently folkloric topics: H 1627 (4)

**Foot**  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1164

**Forecasting**: H 1628  
    Subdivision preferred over phrase headings: H 1628 (1)

**Forecasting** as a subdivision: H 1628

**Forecasts** as a subdivision  
    Usage under centuries: H 1628 (2)

**Foreign countries** as a subdivision  
    Nationalities: H 1919.5 (2, 4)  
    [ . . . ] **in foreign countries** discontinued: H 1919.5 (1)

**Foreign influences** as a subdivision: H 1675 (3-4)

Foreign language teaching films: H 2230 (2)

Foreign languages, Subject headings for

*SEE ALSO* Artificial languages

**French language**

**Romance languages**

**Translating as a subdivision**

–**Acronyms:** H 1206.5

–**Dictionaries:** H 1540 (1)

–**Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.:** H 1540 (1)

Pattern headings: H 1154

Qualifying subject headings by languages: H 320

UF references: H 373 (4)

–**Readers:** H 1975 (1)

–**Study and teaching:** H 2110 (3)

–**Terms and phrases:** H 1540 (1)

–**Textbooks for foreign speakers:** H 2187 (2)

–**Texts:** H 2190 (1)

Foreign languages, Subject headings in

Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 290

Capitalization: Appendix B (10), H 690 (7)

Diacritics and special characters: Appendix C

Establishing subject headings in foreign languages

*SEE ALSO* "Subject heading proposals–Use of vernacular" as a subtopic under  
specific topics

Buildings and structures: H 1334 (2)

Geographic headings: H 690 (4-7)

Transliteration: H 690 (6)

Musical instruments: H 1918 (1-2, 7)

Topical headings: H 315

Parallel Arabic/Persian non-Roman subject headings: H 181

Parallel CJK non-Roman subject headings: H 182

UF references in foreign languages: H 373 (3)

**Foreign population** as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1581 (1)

**Foreign public opinion** as a subdivision: H 1955 (4)

**Foreign relations** as a subdivision: H 1629

–**History**–[*period subdivision*] not used: H 1629 (1)

Use of chronological subdivisions: H 870 (3)

**Foreign relations**–[*dates*]: H 870 (3)

**Foreign relations**–**Treaties** as a subdivision: H 2227 (1)

Foreign terms

*SEE* Foreign languages, Subject headings in



Forest districts  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Forest reserves  
*SEE* Reserves

Forests  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11), H 690 (1)

Forests (Administrative agencies)  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Forks of rivers: H 800 (5-6)

Form/genre headings  
 Moving image works: H 1913  
 Subject heading proposals: H 1913 (3)  
 Music: **H 250**, H 1916.3 (2-3), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917 (1,3), **H 1917.5**

Form subdivisions: H 180 (6), H 1075 (2-3)  
 Commentaries: H 1435 (4)  
 Literature about music: H 1160 (3-4), H 1916.3 (6, 8)  
 Music of ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1916.3 (2-3), H 1917 (1-2, 6)  
 Musical compositions: H 1160 (1, 3, 6), H 2075  
 Musical presentation or format: H 250 (9-10), H 1160 (6-8)  
 Use of subfield code "v": H 1075 (3)

Former Soviet republics: H 1023 (2-4)

Fortresses (Structures): H 1334 (1)  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Forts  
*SEE ALSO* Buildings and structures  
 Military installations, Active  
 Military installations, Inactive  
 –**Capture, [date]**: H 1560 (2)  
 –**Siege, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Fossils: H 1332 (7)  
 Inverted headings: H 306 (4)

Founders of religions  
 Biography: H 1330 (4)  
 Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)  
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110  
 Subdivisions for events focused on: H 1592 (6)

Fountains  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Free-floating subdivisions: H 1095  
*SEE ALSO* Free-floating terms phrases  
 Subdivisions  
 Broader terms: H 370 (7)

Free-floating subdivisions (*Continued*)

"General see also" references: **H 371** (2, 3) H 1146 (1)

"General see" references: H 374 (2)

Subdividing by place: H 860

Used under:

Bodies of water, etc.: H 1145.5

Classes of persons: H 1100

Corporate bodies: H 1105

Ethnic groups: H 1103

Family names: H 1120

Musical compositions: H 1160

Musical instruments: H 1161

Names of literary authors: H 1110

Names of persons: H 1110

Names of places: H 1140

Nationalities: H 1103

Pattern headings: H 1146-H 1200

Rivers: H 1145.5

Free-floating terms and phrases: **H 362**, H 1140 (12)

[ . . . ] **Metropolitan Area**: H 362 (1), **H 790 (1-3)**, H 1140 (6)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

[ . . . ] **Region**

City regions: H 362 (2), **H 790 (1, 4)**, H 1140 (6)

Extinct cities: H 715 (3); H 760 (1)

Geographic regions: H 362 (2), **H 760**

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Regions based on rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

[ . . . ] **Suburban Area**: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 3), H 1140 (6)

**French language**

*SEE ALSO* Foreign languages, Subject headings for

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154

**Funds**

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

**Funeral homes**

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

**- G -**

**GACs**

*SEE* Geographic area codes

Galaxies  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Galleries  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Game preserves  
*SEE* Reserves

Games (Events)  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Gangs  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

"Gaps" in hierarchical reference structure: H 370 (5)

Gardens  
*SEE ALSO* Botanical gardens  
 Zoological gardens  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12), H 690 (1)  
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Gates: H 1334 (1)  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Gautama Buddha  
 Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Gaza Strip: H 980

Gazetteers: H 1630

Genealogy: H 1631  
 Census publications: H 1366 (3)  
 Source materials: H 1845  
 Headings requiring [*place*]-**Genealogy** as an additional heading: H 1845 (2)  
 Subdivisions under place names used for genealogical source materials:  
 H 1845 (1)

**Genealogy** as a subdivision: H 1631 (1-2), H 1845 (1-2)  
 Census publications: H 1366 (3)

**Genealogy–Handbooks, manuals, etc.** as a subdivision: H 1631 (2)

**Genealogy–Methodology** as a subdivision: H 1631 (2)

General see also references: H 371  
 Changing an existing subject authority record: H 195 (2)  
 Contrasted with broader terms: H 371 (3)  
 Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (5, 15)  
 Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (5, 22-24)  
 Musical instruments: H 1918 (1-2)  
 Pattern headings as examples in general see also references: H 371 (9),  
 H 1146 (1, 2)  
 When to establish: H 370 (4), **H 371** (3)

General see references: H 200 (5, 15), **H 374**

Genre/form headings

Moving image works: H 1913

Subject heading proposals: H 1913 (3)

Music: **H 250**, H 1916.3 (2-3), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917 (1,3), **H 1917.5**

Genres, Literary

*SEE ALSO* specific literary genres

Period subdivisions used under: H 1156 (1-2)

Geographic area codes

Bosnia and Hercegovina: H 1055 (2)

Congo: H 928 (3)

Core level records: H 170 (2)

Croatia: H 1055 (2)

Families: H 1631 (6)

Former Soviet republics: H 1023 (5)

Former Yugoslav republics: H 1055 (2)

Gaza Strip: H 980 (5)

Genealogical works: H 1631 (6)

Golan Heights: H 980 (5)

Hong Kong: H 978 (2)

Jazz: H 1916.5 (4)

Jerusalem: H 980 (5)

Macedonia (Republic): H 1055 (2)

Microforms: H 1893

Montenegro: H 1055 (2)

Non-music sound recordings: H 2230 (3)

Palestine: H 980 (5)

Popular music: H 1916.5 (4)

Serbia: H 1055 (2)

Serbia and Montenegro: H 1055 (2)

Slovenia: H 1055 (2)

Soviet Union: H 1023 (5)

Vatican City: H 1045 (1)

Visual materials: H 2230 (3)

West Bank: H 980 (5)

Yugoslavia: H 1055 (2)

Geographic headings, Jurisdictional

*SEE* Geographic name headings

Geographic headings, Non-jurisdictional

*SEE* Geographic subject headings

## Geographic name headings

*SEE ALSO* Geographic subject headings

### Place names

First order political divisions of countries: H 713

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic subdivision information in name authority records: H 835

Linear name changes in political jurisdictions

Recording subject usage information in name authority records: H 708

Use of latest name: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)

Mergers of two or more jurisdictions into one: H 710

Proposing 781 fields for name authority records: H 835 (2-3)

Splits of jurisdictions into multiple entities: H 710

Used as topical subdivisions

Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

## Geographic qualifiers: H 810

Abbreviations: H 810 (3, 8-11)

Buildings and structures: H 1334 (2-6)

CJK records: H 182 (4)

Deletion of generic terms in headings for regions: H 760 (2)

Deletion of qualifiers in geographic subdivision: H 830 (7-8)

Entities in cities: H 810 (5)

Extinct cities: H 715 (2)

Islands: H 807 (1-3)

Region headings: H 760 (2)

Deleting generic terms from qualifiers: H 760 (2)

Rivers: H 800 (1-3)

## Geographic regions

*SEE* Regions, Geographic

## Geographic subdivision information

In name authority records: H 835

In subject authority records: H 364, H 836

## Geographic subdivisions: H 830, H 1075 (1)

Arabic/Persian records: H 181 (3)

Authorizing headings to be divided geographically: H 364

CJK records: H 182 (3)

Corporate bodies: H 364 (5), **H 475**

Proposals to subdivide by place: H 475 (1-2)

Dividing topical subdivisions by place: H 860

Exceptions: H 830 (5-7)

History of geographic subdivision practice: H 830 (1-2)

Interposing place between subject headings and topical subdivisions: H 870

Jazz and popular music headings: H 1916.5 (2-3)

Limit of two levels of geographic subdivision: H 830 (3)

Music, General: H 1916.3 (3, 6)

Geographic subdivisions (*Continued*)

Music of ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917 (1, 4-7)

Musical compositions: H 250 (11), H 1160 (2), H 1916.5 (2-3), H 1917 (1-2, 4)

Musical instruments: H 1917 (1), H 1918 (3-4)

Brands and models: H 1918 (5)

Parks as geographic subdivisions: H 1925 (6)

Subdivisions

Further dividing by place: H 860

Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

Subject headings

Authorizing headings to be divided geographically: H 364

Dividing to the city level: **H 832**, H 1560

Proposals to divide existing headings: H 193 (1), **H 194**

Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

Subject usage information

Name authority records: H 835

Subject authority records: H 836

Geographic subject headings

*SEE ALSO* Geographic name headings

Geographic qualifiers

Place names

types of geographic features

Abbreviations: H 690 (6)

Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 690 (6)

Capitalization: Appendix B (9), H 690 (7)

Free-floating subdivisions

Used under

Bodies of water, streams, etc: H 1145.5

Names of places: H 1140

Free-floating terms and phrases: H 362, H 1140 (6)

[ . . . ] **Metropolitan Area**: H 362 (1), H 790 (1-3), H 1140 (6)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

[ . . . ] **Region**

City regions: H 362 (2), **H 790 (1, 4)** H 1140 (6)

Extinct cities: H 715 (3), H 760 (1)

Geographic regions: H 362 (2), **H 760**

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Regions based on rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

[ . . . ] **Suburban Area**: H 362 (2), **H 790 (1, 3)**, H 1140 (6)

Geographic subject headings (*Continued*)  
  Subject heading proposals: H 690  
    Authority research: H 690 (2-3)  
    BGN decisions: H 690 (2)  
    Broader terms: H 690 (8)  
    English vs. vernacular forms: H 690 (4-5)  
    UF references: H 690 (8)  
  Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)  
  Transliteration: H 690 (6)  
  Used as topical subdivisions  
    Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

Geographical names [i.e. **Names, Geographical** as a subject heading]  
  *SEE* **Names, Geographical**

**Geography** as a subdivision: H 1530 (1)

Geologic basins  
  Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Georgia (Republic): H 1023 (2-4)

German Democratic Republic  
  *SEE* Germany

German Federal Republic  
  *SEE* Germany

Germany: H 945

**Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.** as a subdivision: H 1540 (1), H 2184 (1)

Gods  
  *SEE* Deities  
  Greek and Roman gods

Golan Heights: H 980

Golf courses  
  Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Government agencies  
  Catalogs of publications: H 1965

**Government policy** as a subdivision: H 1642

Government publications: H 1643  
  Publishers' catalogs: H 1965

Grain elevators  
  Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Grasslands  
  Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Graveyards  
  *SEE* Cemeteries

Great Britain: H 955

Assignment of constituent countries directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (5)

Geographic subdivision through names of constituent countries: H 955

Geographic subdivision in law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)

Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1, 8)

Use of county or region names to resolve conflicts: H 810 (4)

**Great Britain–Colonies**

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149.5

Greek and Roman gods: H 1636

Groups of islands

*SEE* Islands

Groups of languages, Subject headings for

*SEE* Foreign languages, Subject headings for

Groups of persons

*SEE* Classes of persons

**Guidebooks** as a subdivision: H 1645

Gymnasiums

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

**- H -**

Haiti

As a geographic qualifier: H 810 (6)

Halfway houses

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

**Hamlet**

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.6

**Handbooks, manuals, etc.** as a subdivision: H 1646

*SEE ALSO* **Guidebooks** as a subdivision

**Tables** as a subdivision

Genealogical works: H 1631 (2)

**Harvard University**

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1151

Hawaii: H 975

Use as a geographic qualifier: H 810 (6), H 975

Hazardous waste sites

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Headings established as name or subject headings: H 405

Heads of state

*SEE* Rulers and statesmen

Hearing impaired, Visual materials for: H 1913 (2)



## Heart

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1164

## Helplines

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

**Herbarium** as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

## Herbariums

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

## Hierarchical references

Broader terms: **H 370**, H 375

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Contrasted with "General see also" references: H 371 (3)

"Gaps" in the hierarchy: H 370 (5)

Geographic names: H 690 (8)

Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (6-7, 16)

Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (4)

Subdivisions under headings with nationality, ethnic group, or language  
qualifiers: H 320 (2)

**[topic]**–**[place]** references: H 375

## Narrower terms

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Procedure for making: H 200 (7)

Highway interchanges: H 2098 (3)

## Highways

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Subject heading proposals: H 2098

Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)

Use of vernacular: H 2098 (1)

## Hijackings

Formulating headings: H 1592

## Hispaniola

Not used as a geographic qualifier: H 810 (6)

## Historic districts

### In cities

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

### Not in cities

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

## Historic kingdoms

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (3, 6)

## Historic sites

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Subject heading proposals: H 1925

Historical events

*SEE* Events

Historical fiction: H 1790 (3)

History

Definition and comparison with **Civilization**: H 1370 (1)

**History and criticism** as a subdivision

Comic strips and single panel cartoons

Not used: H 1430 (2)

Drama: H 1780 (3)

Fiction: H 1790 (4)

Folklore materials: H 1627 (2, 5-7)

Not used under **Folklore**: H 1627 (7)

Legends and romances: H 1795 (3)

Liturgical texts: H 2190 (3)

Music headings

Ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917 (2)

Literature and other materials about music: H 1160 (8), H 1916.3 (6)

Musical compositions: H 1160 (4)

Not used under the heading **Musical instruments** or under headings for specific instruments: H 1917 (5)

Vocal music texts: H 2190 (2)

Poetry: H 1800 (3)

Sermons: H 2032 (4)

–**Songs and music**: H 2075 (3)

**History** as a subdivision: H 1647

–**Bombardment, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

–**Capture, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Chronological subdivisions: H 1647 (2-3)

–**Destruction, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Musical instruments: H 1917 (5)

Philosophy headings: H 1647 (5)

–**Siege, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Subdivisions not further subdivided by –**History**: H 1647 (6)

**History–Chronology** as a subdivision: H 1367

History, Constitutional: H 1465 (5)

**History–Sources** as a subdivision: H 2080

Government publications: H 1643 (2)

Not used under headings assigned to correspondence: H 1480 (2)

**Homes and haunts** as a subdivision

Works about buildings: H 1334 (9)

Homilies

*SEE* Sermons

Hong Kong (China): H 978  
Hospitals  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (7)  
Hotels  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (7)  
Hotlines  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (7)  
Houses: H 1334 (1)  
Houses, Noble  
    *SEE* Noble houses  
Houses, Royal  
    *SEE* Royal houses  
Hurricanes  
    Establishing individual hurricanes: H 1560 (4)  
Husbands of famous women  
    Biography: H 1330 (4)

- I -

Illumination artists  
    *SEE* Manuscript illuminators  
Illumination of manuscripts: H 1855 (2-9, 15-18)  
**Illustrations** as a subdivision: H 1659, H 1935 (2)  
    Contrasted with –**Pictorial works**: H 1659 (2)  
    Manuscripts: H 1855 (3-4, 6-7, 15-18)  
Illustrators  
    Artists as illustrators: H 1250 (10)  
Imaginary persons  
    *SEE* Fictitious characters  
**Immigrants**: H 1581 (2-3, 5)  
    Biography: H 1581 (3)  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1100  
    Geographic subdivision: H 1581 (2)  
    Particular ethnic groups: H 1581 (3,5)  
Immigrants' descendants  
    Particular ethnic groups: H 1581 (3)  
Immigration  
    *SEE* Emigration and immigration  
Immigration policy  
    *SEE* **Emigration and immigration–Government policy** as a subdivision

Immigration stations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

**Imprints** as a subdivision: H 1660

**In art** as a subdivision: H 362 (1); H 910 (1); H 1935 (2)

[...] **in art**: H 362 (1), H 910 (1), H 1935 (2)

[...] **in** [...] headings

[*class of persons*] **in** [*discipline*]: H 360

[*nationality*] **in** [*place*]

Replaced by [*nationality*] (*May Subd Geog*): H 1919.5 (1)

[*place*] **in** [...]: H 910

[*topic*] **in** [*topic*]

Broader terms: H 370 (9)

Contrasted with parenthetical qualifiers: H 357 (2)

**In literature** as a subdivision: H 362 (1); H 910 (2); H 1780 (3); H 1790 (4); H 1800 (3)

[...] **in literature**: H 362 (1), H 910 (2)

**In motion pictures** as a subdivision: H 910 (2)

[...] **in motion pictures**: H 910 (2)

[...] (**in religion, folklore, etc.**)

Discontinued: H 1998 (1)

**In-service training** as a subdivision: H 2217 (2)

[...] **in textbooks**: H 2187 (2)

[...] **in the Bible**: H 1295

Incunabula

*SEE* Early works

Indexes

Treated as supplementary works: H 2145

**Indexes** as a subdivision: **H 1670**

Indian reservations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12), H 1925

Indians

*SEE ALSO* Tribes (Ethnic groups)

Folklore: H 1627 (3, 6)

–**History–Chronology**: H 1367 (2)

Indigenous tribes of the United States

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)

–**Music**: H 1917 (2)

–**Philosophy**: H 1929

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 351

Systems of law: H 1718 (1)

–**Wars**

As broader term for battles: H 1285 (3)

Indians of the United States, Newspapers of: H 1920 (2)

**Indigenous peoples:** H 1103 (1)  
 Indigenous tribes of the United States  
     As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)  
 Indirect subdivision  
     *SEE* Geographic subdivisions  
 Individual persons  
     *SEE* Names of persons  
 Individual works of art: H 1250 (12)  
     Established as name headings: H 405 (7)  
 Industries  
     Based on products: H 1673  
     –**Directories:** H 1558 (3)  
     Pattern headings: H 1153  
**Influence** as a subdivision: H 1580 (1), **H 1675** (1)  
 [ . . . ], **Influence of:** H 1580 (1)  
**Influence of** as a subdivision  
     Discontinued: H 1580 (1), H 1675 (1)  
 [ . . . ], **Influence of [ . . . ] on:** H 1580 (1)  
**Influence on [ . . . ]** as a subdivision  
     Discontinued: H 1580 (1), H 1675 (1)  
 [ . . . ] **influences** as a subdivision: H 1580 (1), H 1675 (2-3)  
     Broader terms: H 1675 (3)  
     Folklore materials: H 1627 (3)  
**Information services:** H 1675.5  
**Information services** as a subdivision: H 1675.5  
 Ingredients for cooking: H 1475 (2)  
     Establishing headings: H 1475 (4)  
 Initial articles in subject headings  
     *SEE* Articles in the initial position in subject headings  
 Initialisms: Appendix A (2)  
**Inquisition:** H 1676  
**Inspection** as a subdivision: H 1676.5  
 Institutions, Educational  
     *SEE* Educational institutions, Individual  
         Educational institutions, Types of  
**Instruction and study** as a subdivision: H 2110 (3)  
     Musical compositions: H 1160 (8)  
     Musical instruments: H 1161  
 Instructional materials, Music: H 1916.3 (3, 7)  
 Instrumental ensembles in music form/genre headings: H 250 (1, 7), H 1917.5 (8, 18-25)  
 Instruments, Musical  
     *SEE* Musical instruments

**Insulin**

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149

**Insurrections**

Pattern heading: H 1200

**Intelligence testing** as a subdivision: H 2186 (1)

Interchanges, Express highway: H 2098 (3)

**Internal migration**

*SEE* **Migration, Internal**

International agency publications: H 1643 (1)

**International bodies of water**

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Geographic qualifiers: H 810 (7)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (6)

International conventions (Treaties): H 2227 (4)

**International organizations**

Regions based on: H 760 (4)

**International relations:** H 1942 (1)

**Internet resources**

Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

**Interviews** as a subdivision: H 1678

**Invasions**

Formulating headings: H 1592

**Inverted word order**

Topical subject headings: H 306

Islam: H 1680

[ . . . ], **Islamic:** H 1680

**Islamic law**

Dividing headings geographically: H 1718

**Islands:** H 807

Buildings and structures on: H 1334 (4)

Entities on: H 810 (5-6), H 807 (9)

Established as name headings if jurisdictional: H 807 (1)

Established as subject headings if non-jurisdictional: H 405 (11), H 807 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic qualifiers: H 807 (1-3)

Geographic subdivision: H 807 (6-9)

Subject usage information

In name authority records: H 835 (1-3)

In subject authority records: H 836

Parks coextensive with islands: H 1925 (5)

Islands (*Continued*)

[ . . . ] **Region**

Headings not constructed for regions based on islands: H 760 (1)

Subject heading proposals: H 807 (1-5)

Islands of the Caribbean

Geographic subdivision: H 807 (8)

- J -

Japanese subject headings (Non-Roman): H 182

Jazz: **H 1916.5**, H 1917.5 (12)

Jerusalem: H 980

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7)

Metropolitan Area: H 790 (1, 3)

**Jesuits**

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1186

**Jesus Christ**

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

–**Trial**: H 2228 (2)

**Jewish** as a qualifier: H 306 (1); H 320 (1)

**Jewish way of life**: H 2015.5 (1)

Jurisdictional mergers and splits: H 710

Jurisdictions

*SEE* Geographic name headings

Jurisdictions, Ancient (other than cities)

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Juvenile dictionaries

*SEE* **Dictionaries, Juvenile** as a subdivision

Juvenile drama: H 1690 (2), H 1780 (2)

Juvenile fiction: H 1690 (2), H 1790 (2)

Juvenile films: H 1690 (2-3)

**Juvenile literature** as a subdivision: H 1690

–**Juvenile literature–Bibliography**: H 1690 (4)

–**Periodicals–Juvenile literature**: H 1927 (1)

Juvenile materials: H 180 (2), **H 1690**

Juvenile poetry: H 1690 (2), H 1800 (2)

Juvenile software: H 1690 (3)

Juvenile sound recordings: H 1690 (2-3)

Juvenile textbooks: H 1690 (1), H 2187 (3)

- K -

Kazakstan: H 1023 (2-4)

Kingdoms

SEE Historic kingdoms

**Kings and rulers** as a subdivision: H 1574 (2-3, 5)

SEE ALSO Rulers and statesmen

Koran: H 1300

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1188

Korean subject headings (Non-Roman): H 182

Kyrgyzstan: H 1023 (4)

- L -

**Labor laws and legislation**

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154.5

Laboratories

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Lakes

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Geographic qualifiers: H 810

Lakes in cities: H 810 (5)

Land grants

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Land vehicles

Pattern heading: H 1195

Landslides

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Language dictionaries: H 1540

Language of vocal texts: H 250 (4-5), H 1916.3 (2, 5), H 1917 (1, 4-5)

Language qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (2)

Language teachers

-**Training of:** H 2217 (1)

Languages

SEE **English language**

Foreign languages, Subject headings for

**French language**

**Romance languages**



NARS

*SEE* Name authority records

National monuments

*SEE* Monuments

National parks: H 1925 (2-4)

Nationalities: H 1919.5

Folklore: H 1627 (2-3, 7)

–**Foreign countries:** H 1919.5 (2, 4)

Free-floating subdivisions under: **H 1103**, H 1919.5 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under headings for classes of persons with national  
qualifiers: H 1100

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 350

National and ethnic qualifiers not used for headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)

Subject heading proposals: H 1919.5 (1)

Nationalities, Music of

*SEE* Music of national groups

Nationalities in the United States

*SEE* Ethnic groups in the United States

Nationality qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (2), H 320, H 350

Not used for headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)

Native Americans

*SEE* Indians

Natural disasters

*SEE* Disasters

specific types of disasters

Natural features in cities

Qualifying subject headings: H 810 (5)

**Natural history collections** as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Natural language

Topical subject headings: H 306

Natural objects

–**Catalogs and collections:** H 1360 (3), H 1427 (2)

Nature conservation areas

*SEE* Parks

New subject heading proposals

*SEE* Subject heading proposals

**New York (N.Y.):** H 990

City sections, boroughs, counties: H 990 (2)

Metropolitan Area: H 362 (1), H 790 (1,3), H 990 (1)

Region: H 790 (4)

New Zealand

Abbreviation as a geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)

## Newspapers

–**Directories:** H 1558 (4)

–**Sections, columns, etc.–Reviews:** H 2021 (2)

**Newspapers** as a subdivision: H 1920

Newspapers about specific places: H 1920 (1)

Newspapers of ethnic groups in the United States: H 1920

Newspapers of Indians of the United States: H 1920 (2)

Newspapers on special topics: H 1920

Night clubs

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Noble houses

Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (4)

Non-English languages

*SEE* Foreign languages, Subject headings in  
Foreign languages, Subject headings for

Non-fiction films: H 1913 (1)

Non-fiction television programs: H 1913 (1)

Non-free-floating subdivisions

*SEE* Subdivisions

Non-jurisdictional corporate body headings

*SEE* Corporate bodies

Non-jurisdictional geographic headings

*SEE* Geographic subject headings

Non-jurisdictional islands

*SEE* Islands

Non-music sound recordings: H 2230

Non-Roman Arabic/Persian subject headings: H 181

Non-Roman CJK subject headings: H 182

"Nonprint" headings: H 1332 (5)

**Northern, Southern, Central**, etc., as a qualifiers:

Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)

Northern Ireland

Geographic subdivision: H 955 (1)

Law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)

*(Not Subd Geog)*

Coding headings: H 364 (2-4)

NTS

*SEE* Narrower terms

Number of choral parts in chorus music headings: H 1917.5 (34)

Number of solo vocal parts in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (29-31)

Number of the same instrument in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (11, 14-17)

Numerals

Abbreviations: Appendix A (6-7)

Numeric tags: H 200

**Numismatic collections** as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)  
Nursery rhymes: H 1800 (2)  
    Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)  
Nursing homes  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

- O -

Observatories  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)  
Occupational groups  
    Folklore: H 1627 (3)  
    –**Education**: H 2217 (2)  
    –**Professional ethics**: H 1949  
    –**Training of**: H 2217 (1-2)  
Occupations  
    Formulating headings: H 1592  
Ocean currents  
    Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)  
Oceans  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5  
Office buildings  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)  
Official residences  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)  
Old age homes  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)  
Old Catalog headings  
    Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (5)  
**On postage stamps** as a subdivision: H 1945  
Online subject authority records  
    *SEE* Subject authority records  
Opera houses  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)  
**Operas**  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1160  
    –**History and criticism** not used: H 1160 (4)  
Order of instruments in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (9-10, 27)  
Order of subdivisions in a subject heading string: H 1075 (4-6)  
Order of subject headings: H 80

Orders, Monastic  
    *SEE* Monastic orders  
Orders, Religious  
    *SEE* Religious orders  
Ordinal numerals  
    *SEE* Numerals  
Organizations  
    *SEE* Corporate bodies  
**Organs** as a subdivision  
    Musical instruments: H 1918 (4)  
Organs of the body  
    Pattern heading: H 1164  
"Orphan" subject headings: H 370 (3-4)  
Orphanages  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (7)  
"OSER" file  
    *SEE* "MAGS" file

- P -

Pageants  
    Established as name headings: H 1592 (2)  
Palaces  
    *SEE ALSO* Buildings and structures  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)  
Palestine: H 980 (2)  
Palestinian National Authority: H 980 (3)  
Parades  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)  
Parenthetical qualifiers in subject headings: H 357  
    Music: H 250 (3, 5, 10-11), H 1916.3 (3-5), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917.5  
    Musical instruments: H 1161 (2), H 1918 (2, 6-8)  
Park districts  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)  
Parks: H 1925  
    *SEE ALSO* City parks  
        National parks  
    As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (4), H 1925 (6)  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (12), H 690 (1)  
    Subject heading proposals: H 1925 (2-5)  
    Use of vernacular: H 1925 (2)

Parks (Administrative agencies)  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Partial biography: H 1330 (5)

Partial title added entries: **H 150**  
 Named collections of objects: H 1427 (3)

**Participation**, [ . . . ] as a subdivision: H 1200 (1-2)

Parts of the body  
 Singular vs. plural: H 285 (1)

Pattern headings: H 1146  
*SEE ALSO* specific pattern headings  
 As examples in "General see also" references: **H 371** (9), H 1146 (1, 2)  
 Establishing new subdivisions under: H 1146 (2-3)  
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147-H 1200  
 Music headings governed by: H 250 (7-11)

Pavilions  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Peoples, Ancient  
*SEE* Ancient peoples

People's Republic of China  
*SEE* China

Performing arts  
*SEE ALSO* Drama  
 Music  
 –**Reviews**: H 2021 (2)

Period subdivisions  
*SEE* Chronological subdivisions

**Periodicals** as a subdivision: **H 1927**, H 2060  
 Form subdivisions not further subdivided by –**Periodicals**: H 1927 (2)

Periodicals, Bibliographies of: H 1927 (2)

Periodicals, Catalogs of: H 1361 (1)

Periodicals, Electronic: H 1580.5

Persian subject headings (Non-Roman): H 181

Personal correspondence  
*SEE* Correspondence of individual persons

Personal names  
*SEE* Names of persons

**Personal narratives** as a subdivision: H 1480 (2), H 1538 (2), **H 1928**

Persons, Classes of  
*SEE* Classes of persons

Persons, Names of  
*SEE* Names of persons

Pets  
 Biography: H 1720

Philosophers

–**Philosophy** not used under names of individual philosophers: H 1929

Philosophy headings

Usage of –**History** under: H 1647 (5)

**Photograph collections** as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

**Photographs** as a subdivision: H 1935 (3)

**Photographs from space** as a subdivision: H 1210.5 (2)

Photography: H 1935 (2)

Photography, Aerial: H 1210.5

Photography, Artistic: H 1255

Photography, Portrait: H 1255 (2)

Photography, Space: H 1210.5 (2)

Phrase headings

*SEE ALSO* [...] **and** [...] headings

Free-floating terms and phrases

[...] **in** [...] headings

Broader terms: H 370 (6-9)

Phrase headings vs. subdivisions

[...] **and** [...] headings: H 310

Established phrase headings vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1095 (2)

**Piano**

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161

**Pictorial works** as a subdivision: H 1935

Picture dictionaries: H 1540 (4)

Pipelines

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Place names

*SEE ALSO* Geographic name headings

Geographic subject headings

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Dictionaries (Gazetteers)

*SEE* Gazetteers

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Local history and genealogical source material: H 1845

Newspapers: H 1920 (1)

Used as topical subdivisions

Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

Plains

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Planetariums

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Planets

*SEE* Celestial bodies

Planned communities

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Plans (Programs)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Plants

*SEE ALSO* Domestic plants

Assigning classification numbers: H 1332 (5)

Establishing biological names: H 1332 (1-6)

Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*: H 1332 (5)

Geographic subdivision allowed at any taxonomic level: H 1332 (5)

Pattern heading: H 1180

Subject heading proposals: H 1332

Playgrounds

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Plays

*SEE* Drama

Plays, Children's

*SEE* Juvenile drama

Plazas: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Plural vs. singular form of subject headings: H 285

Animals: H 1332 (2)

[ . . . ] as [ . . . ] headings: H 360

Musical compositions: H 250 (1), H 1160 (3-4), H 1917.5 (8)

Musical instruments: H 250 (9-10), H 1917.5 (8), H 1918 (1-3, 6-7)

Parts of the body: H 285 (1)

Plants: H 1332 (2)

Products: H 285 (1)

Poetry: H 1800

Poetry, Children's

*SEE* Juvenile poetry

Poetry, Folk

*SEE* Folk poetry

**Poetry** as a subdivision: H 1800 (1)

Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)

Place names: H 910 (2)

Poets

*SEE* Literary authors, Groups

Literary authors, Individual

Police stations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

**Political activity** as a subdivision: H 1942 (3)

**Political aspects** as a subdivision: H 1942 (3)  
Political divisions of countries  
    *SEE* Geographic name headings—First order political divisions of countries  
Political history  
    *SEE* **Politics and government** as a subdivision  
Political incidents  
    Formulating headings: H 1592  
Political jurisdictions  
    *SEE* Geographic name headings  
**Political participation:** H 1942 (3)  
**Political science:** H 1942 (1)  
Politicians  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110  
**Politics, Practical:** H 1942 (3)  
**Politics and government** as a subdivision: H 1942  
Polyglot dictionaries: H 1540 (2-4)  
Pools, Public  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)  
Poorhouses  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)  
Popular music: H 1916.5  
**Popular works** as a subdivision: H 1943.5  
Port authorities  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)  
Portals as building details  
    *SEE* Building details  
Portrait photography: H 1255 (2)  
**Portraits** as a subdivision: H 1935 (2)  
Ports  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)  
Possessions  
    *SEE* **Territories and possessions** as a subdivision  
Post offices  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)  
Postage stamps on specific topics: H 1945  
Poster collections: H 1945.5 (3)  
**Poster collections** as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)  
Posters: H 1945.5  
    Qualifying by nationalities: H 1945.5 (2)  
Posters, Travel  
    *SEE* Travel posters  
**Posters** as a subdivision: H 1945.5



Posthouses  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Power plants  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Preaching: H 2032 (4)

Prehistoric periods and cultures: H 1225 (2)

Prepositional phrase headings  
*SEE* Phrase headings

Presidential mansions  
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Presidents  
*SEE* Rulers and statesmen

Princes: H 1574 (2)

Princesses: H 1574 (2)

Prisons  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Private book collections  
*SEE* **Library** as a subdivision

Private collections: H 1427 (2-4)

**Private collections** as a subdivision: H 1360 (3), H 1427  
 Use of geographic subdivision for location of collection: H 1427 (1)

Prizes: H 1265

Products  
 Singular vs. plural: H 285 (1)

**Professional ethics:** H 1949

**Professional ethics** as a subdivision: H 1949

Programs (Plans)  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Programs, Computer  
*SEE* Computer programs, Individual

Projects  
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Proper names  
*SEE* Name headings

Proposals for name authority records made by subject catalogers  
 Adding 781 fields: H 835 (2-3)  
 Dividing corporate name headings geographically: H 475 (1-2)

Proposals for subject headings  
*SEE* Subject heading proposals  
 "Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics

Proverbs  
 Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

**Provinces** as a subdivision: H 713  
Provisional name headings: H 436  
Provisional subject headings: H 1334 (2)  
**Psychological testing** as a subdivision: H 2186  
Public buildings  
    Broader terms: H 1334 (7)  
Public celebrations  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)  
Public comfort stations  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)  
**Public opinion** as a subdivision: H 1955  
Public pools  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)  
Publishers' catalogs: H 1965  
Publishers' imprints  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)  
Pueblos  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)  
Puerto Rico  
    Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)  
Punctuation: Appendix D  
    Headings using free-floating terms and phrases: H 362 (3)  
    Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (26)  
    [ . . . ] **Region** headings: H 362 (3), H 760 (1)  
Purges  
    Formulating headings: H 1592

- Q -

Qualifiers, Geographic  
    *SEE* Geographic qualifiers  
Qualifiers, Parenthetical, in subject headings  
    *SEE* Parenthetical qualifiers in subject headings  
Qualifiers, Subject heading  
    *SEE* Subject heading qualifiers  
Quarters of cities: H 720  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (5), H 720 (1)  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140  
    Geographic subdivision: H 720 (2), **H 830 (4)**  
Queens: H 1574 (2)

**Questions and answers:** H 1910  
**Quotations** as a subdivision: H 1969  
**Quotations, maxims, etc.** as a subdivision: H 1969

**- R -**

Races (Contests)  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Racetracks  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Radio programs  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Raids  
    Formulating headings: H 1592

Railroads: H 1970  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8), H 1970 (1)

Railway stations  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Ranches  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

**Readers:** H 1975  
**Readers** as a subdivision: H 1975

Reading films, Juvenile  
    *SEE* Juvenile films

**Reading interests:** H 1333

Recipes: H 1475

Recordings, Catalogs of  
    *SEE* **Audiotape catalogs** as a subdivision  
    **Discography** as a subdivision  
    **Film catalogs** as a subdivision  
    **Video tape catalogs** as a subdivision

Recordings, Juvenile sound  
    *SEE* Juvenile sound recordings

Recreation areas  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Recreation districts  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

**Recruiting, enlistment, etc.** as a subdivision  
    Subdividing by wars: H 1159 (2)

Reference books: H 1980  
    Bibliographies: H 1980 (2-3)

## References

- SEE* Broader terms
- Narrower terms
- Related terms
- "Used for" references

## Referrals to descriptive catalogers

- Requests to have named entities established: H 405 (3)

## Refugee camps

- Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

## **Regimental histories** as a subdivision: H 1995

## Regions, Geographic

- City regions: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 4)
- Extinct cities: H 715 (3); H 760 (1)
- Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)
- Constructing headings with the free-floating term [ . . . ] **Region**: H 362 (2-3), **H 760**
- Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
- Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
- Geographic subdivision: H 830 (6)
- Regions based on international organizations: H 760 (4)
- Regions based on rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

## **Regions** as a subdivision: H 713

## Regions of the body

- Pattern heading: H 1164

## **Registers of births, etc.:** H 1631 (2), H 1845 (2)

## Reigns

- Formulating headings: H 1592

## Related terms: H 370 (10-12)

- Changing references: H 195 (1-2)
- Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (6-7, 16)
- Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (4)

## **Relations** as a subdivision: H 1996

## Relationships between two topics

- [ . . . ] **and** [ . . . ] headings: H 310

## **Religion** as a subdivision: H 1997

- Religion–History** not used: H 1997 (1, 2)

## Religions: H 1998, H 2015

- Apologetic works**: H 1472 (1)
- As subdivisions under –**Religions aspects**: H 1998 (2)
- As subdivisions under topical headings: H 2015 (2)
- Civilization: H 1370 (2)
- Controversial literature**: H 1472 (1)
- Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Religions (*Continued*)

Founders of

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Subdivisions for events focused on: H 1592 (6)

–**Liturgy–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Pattern heading: H 1185

–**Rituals–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

**Religious aspects** as a subdivision: H 1998

Subdivided by religions and denominations: H 1998 (2-3)

Religious denominations

*SEE ALSO* Christian denominations

Religious sects

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Religious education textbooks: H 2187 (2)

Religious groups

Music: H 1916.3 (6), **H 1917**

**Religious life:** H 2015.5

*SEE ALSO* **Christian life**

**Religious life and customs** as a subdivision: H 2016

**Religious life** as a subdivision: H 2015.5

Religious orders

Adjectival qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)

–**Controversial literature:** H 1472 (1)

–**Monastic and religious life:** H 2015.5 (1)

Pattern heading: H 1186

Religious qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)

Religious sects: H 2015 (2)

*SEE ALSO* Christian denominations

–**Apologetic works:** H 1472

As subdivisions under –**Religious aspects:** H 1998 (2-3)

As subdivisions under topical headings: H 2015 (2)

–**Civilization** not used: H 1370 (2)

–**Controversial literature:** H 1472 (1)

Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405 (8)

–**Liturgy–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Pattern heading: H 1185

–**Rituals–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Religious works

*SEE ALSO* Sacred works

–**History and criticism:** H 2190 (3)

Manuscripts: H 1855 (3, 11-18)

Republic of China

*SEE* Taiwan

**Republics** as a subdivision: H 713

Republics of the former Soviet Union: H 1023 (2-4)

Requests to descriptive catalogers to establish named entities: H 405 (3)

Research, Legal

*SEE* **Legal research** as a subdivision

**Research** as a subdivision

**Research** as a subdivision: H 2020

Legal materials: H 1710

Research for subject heading proposals: H 202

Research stations

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Reservations, Indian

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Reserves

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Subject heading proposals: H 1925 (2-5)

Use of vernacular: H 1925 (2)

Reserves (Administrative agencies)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Reservoirs

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Resorts

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Restaurants

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Retail stores

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

**Retail trade**

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1153

**Return migration:** H 1581 (4)

**Reviews** as a subdivision: H 2021

Revolutions

*SEE ALSO* Cultural revolutions

Formulating headings: H 1592

Pattern heading: H 1200

Rhymes, Nursery

*SEE* Nursery rhymes

Riddles

Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Riots

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

**Rituals–Texts** as a subdivision: H 2190 (3)

River basins

*SEE* Watersheds

River deltas

*SEE* Deltas

River regions: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

River valleys

*SEE ALSO* Rivers

Valleys

Formulating headings: **H 800** (7), H 1145.5 (2)

[ . . . ] **Region**

Headings not constructed for regions based on river valleys: H 760 (1)

Rivers

*SEE ALSO* Estuaries

Forks of rivers

River regions

River valleys

Watersheds

Wild and scenic rivers

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Free-floating region headings based on names of rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8),  
H 1145.5 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Geographic subdivision: H 800 (9)

Subject heading proposals: H 800 (1-6)

Geographic qualifiers: H 800 (1-3)

References: H 800 (3-5)

Roads

- Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
- Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)
- Subject heading proposals: H 2098
  - Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)
  - Use of vernacular: H 690 (4), H 2098 (1)

Rockshelters

- Subject heading proposals: H 1225 (4)

Roman gods

- SEE* Greek and Roman gods

Roman numerals

- SEE* Numerals

**Romance languages**

- SEE ALSO* Foreign languages, Subject headings for
- Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154

Romances: H 1795

Romances, Arthurian

- SEE* Arthurian romances

**Romances** as a subdivision: H 1795 (2-3)

Romanization

- Arabic/Persian subject headings: H 181
- CJK subject headings: H 182
- Greek and Hebrew letters in subject headings: Appendix C (4)
- Topical headings established in foreign languages: H 315
- UF references for geographic headings: H 690 (8)

Rooms as building details: H 1334 (1, 8)

- Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Royal houses: H 1574

- Biography** not used: H 1574 (2)
- Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120
- Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (1-4)

RTS

- SEE* Related terms

Rulers and statesmen

- SEE ALSO* **Kings and rulers** as a subdivision
- Biography: H 1330 (5)
- Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Russia: H 1023 (1)

**Russian** as adjectival qualifier

- vs. **Soviet**: H 1023 (4)



- S -

Sacred texts set to music: H 250 (2), H 1916.3 (5)

Sacred works

*SEE ALSO* Religious works

Translations—Sacred works

specific sacred books

Commentaries: H 1435 (3)

–**Controversial literature:** H 1472 (2)

–**History—Chronology:** H 1367 (2)

Manuscripts: H 1855 (6, 11-18)

Pattern heading: H 1188

–**Textbooks:** H 2187 (1)

–**Translations:** H 1300 (1)

–**Translations into [ . . . ]:** H 1300 (2)

Versions or translations: **H 1300**, H 1435 (3)

**Safety regulations** as a subdivision: H 1705

**Saint**

Abbreviations: Appendix A (7-8)

Family names: H 1631 (3)

Sanatoriums

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Sanitary landfills

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Sanitation districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Satellites (Moons)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Satellites, Artificial

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Scandals

Formulating headings: H 1592

Scenic rivers

*SEE* Wild and scenic rivers

School districts

Established as name headings: H 450 (8)

Schools (Educational institutions)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Schools (Groups of people)

Capitalization: Appendix B (8)

Schools of artists

Capitalization: Appendix B (8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Scientific and technical atlases: H 1935 (3)

**Scientific apparatus collections** as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Scientific expeditions:

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Scope notes: H 400

Adding to an existing heading: H 400 (4)

Changing an existing note: H 400 (4)

Proposing with a new heading: H 200 (8, 17), H 400 (4)

Scope notes that allow for free-floating subdivision of headings: H 1090 (1)

Scores

Not forwarded to the Subject Headings Editorial team when proposing new headings:  
H 250 (11)

Scotland

Geographic subdivision: H 955 (1)

Law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)

Sculpture: H 1250 (2)

Seas

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

**Sections, columns, etc.–Reviews** as a subdivision: H 2021 (2)

Sects, Christian

*SEE* Christian denominations

Sects, Religious

*SEE* Religious sects

"See also" references

*SEE* Broader terms

Narrower terms

Related terms

"See also" references, General

*SEE* General see also references

"See" references

*SEE* "Used for" references

"See" references, General

*SEE* General see references

Selections

Not used in name-title subject headings for musical works: H 1438 (2)

Serbia: H 1055

Serbia and Montenegro: H 1055

Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1)

Serials, Electronic: H 1580.5  
Sermons: H 2032  
Service stations  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (9)  
**Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616**  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110  
**Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616. Hamlet**  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.6  
Ships  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (9)  
Shipyards  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (9)  
Shopping centers  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)  
**Short films:** H 1913 (2)  
Shows (Exhibitions)  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (9)  
Shrines  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)  
Sieves: H 1560 (2), H 1592 (8)  
    Formulating headings: H 1592  
**Simulation methods** as a subdivision: H 2040 (1), H 2110 (4)  
Singular vs. plural form of subject headings: H 285  
    Animals: H 1332 (2)  
        [ . . . ] as [ . . . ] headings: H 360  
    Musical compositions: H 250 (1), H 1160 (3-4), H 1917.5 (8)  
    Musical instruments: H 250 (9-10), H 1917.5 (8), H 1918 (1-3, 6-7)  
    Parts of the body: H 285 (1)  
    Plants: H 1332 (2)  
    Products: H 285 (1)  
Sites, Archaeological  
    *SEE* Archaeological sites  
653 field for uncontrolled subject terms: H 160  
**Slide collections** as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)  
Slides: H 2230  
**Slides** as a subdivision: H 1935 (3)  
Slovenia: H 1055  
**Social conditions** as a subdivision: H 2055  
Social history  
    Definition and comparison with **Civilization:** H 1370 (1)

**Social life and customs** as a subdivision: H 2057  
Folklore materials: H 1627 (1)  
–**History** not used: H 2057 (1)  
Period subdivisions: H 2057 (1)

**Societies and clubs** as a subdivision: H 2060

**Societies, etc.** as a subdivision: H 2060  
Family names: H 1631 (8)

**Socioeconomic status** as a subdivision  
Discontinued: H 1578 (1), H 2055 (1)

**Sociological aspects** as a subdivision: H 2055 (1)

Software: H 2070  
Individual computer programs established as name headings: H 405 (9)  
Juvenile software: H 1690 (3)

Song texts  
Language: H 250 (4-5), H 1916.3 (5), H 1917 (1, 4-5)  
Without the music: H 2190 (2)

Songs, Folk  
*SEE Folk songs*

**Songs and music** as a subdivision: H 1160 (3, 6), H 1916.3 (4), H 2075

Sound recording labels  
Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Sound recordings  
Jazz and popular music  
Chronological subdivisions: H 1916.5 (3)  
Juvenile: H 1690 (2-3)  
Non-music: H 2230  
Not forwarded to the Subject Headings Editorial team when proposing new headings:  
H 250 (11)

Sound recordings, Juvenile  
*SEE Juvenile sound recordings*

Sound recordings, Non-music: H 2230

Source materials: H 2080  
*SEE ALSO* specific types of source materials  
Bibliographies: H 2080 (4-5)  
Catalogs: H 2080 (5)

**Sources** as a subdivision: H 1480 (2), **H 2080**  
Government publications: H 1643 (2)

**Southern, Central, Northern, etc.**, as qualifiers:  
Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)

Sovereignties, Territorial  
*SEE Territorial sovereignties*

**Soviet** as adjectival qualifier  
vs. **Russian**: H 1023 (4)  
Soviet republics, Former: H 1023 (2-4)  
Soviet Union: H 1023 (1)  
Space exploration: H 1564 (2)  
Space photography: H 1210.5 (2)  
Space vehicles  
Established as name headings: H 405 (9)  
Spanish America  
*SEE* Latin America  
Spas  
Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)  
Special characters: Appendix C  
Special days: H 1592  
Special decades: H 1592  
Special months: H 1592  
Special weeks: H 1592  
Special years: H 1592  
**Specifications**: H 2083  
**Specifications** as a subdivision: H 2083  
Specificity of subject headings: H 180 (2)  
Splits of jurisdictions into two or more entities: H 710  
Sports arenas  
Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)  
Sports events  
*SEE ALSO* specific types of sports events  
Established as name headings: H 405 (9)  
Sports facilities  
Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)  
Spouses of famous people  
Biography: H 1330 (4)  
Squadrons  
Use of –**Regimental histories**: H 1995  
Stadiums  
Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)  
Stagecoach stations  
Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)  
**Stamp collections** as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)  
**States** as a subdivision: H 713  
Statesmen  
*SEE* Rulers and statesmen  
**Statistical methods** as a subdivision: H 2095 (2)

**Statistical services** as a subdivision: H 2095 (3)  
 Statistics: H 2095  
     Nature of work/nature of contents codes: H 2095 (3)  
 Statistics, Medical  
     *SEE* Medical statistics  
 Statistics, Vital  
     *SEE* Vital statistics  
**Statistics** as a subdivision: H 2095 (1-2)  
 Statues  
     *SEE* Monuments  
 Steppes  
     Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)  
 Stock exchanges  
     Established as name headings: H 405 (8)  
 Stores, Retail  
     Established as name headings: H 405 (9)  
**Stories** as a subdivision  
     Discontinued: H 1790 (2)  
 Storms  
     Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)  
 Straight word order  
     Topical subject headings: H 306  
 Streets  
     Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)  
     Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)  
     Subject heading proposals: H 2098  
         Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)  
         Use of vernacular: H 690 (4), H 2098 (1)  
 Strikes: H 2100  
 Structures  
     *SEE* Buildings and structures  
 Students  
     Qualifying by nationality: H 350 (2)  
**Students–Yearbooks** as a subdivision: H 2400  
 Studies (Research projects)  
     Established as name headings: H 405 (9)  
**Studies and exercises** as a subdivision: H 1161 (2)  
**Study and teaching** as a subdivision: H 2110  
     Area studies: H 2110 (2)  
     –**Activity programs**: H 2110 (4)  
     –**Audio-visual aids**: H 2110 (4)  
     –**Simulation methods**: H 2110 (4)  
     –**Supervision**: H 2110 (2)

Subdivision, Geographic

SEE Geographic subdivisions

Subdivision, Indirect

SEE Geographic subdivisions

Subdivisions: H 1075

SEE ALSO Chronological subdivisions

Discontinued subdivisions

Form subdivisions

Free-floating subdivisions

Geographic subdivisions

Multiple subdivisions

specific pattern headings

Abbreviated forms discontinued: Appendix A (1)

Broader terms: H 370 (4, 7-8)

Controlled by pattern headings: H 1146-H 1200

Formulating dates for specific events: H 1078

Further subdividing by place: H 860

"General see also" references: H 371 (2-8)

"General see" references: H 374 (2)

Interposing place between subject headings and topical subdivisions: H 870

Order of subdivisions: H 1075 (4-6)

Proposals to establish

Multiple subdivisions: H 1090 (3)

Religions: H 1998 (2), H 2015 (2)

Subdivisions having general application: H 205

Subdivisions qualified by nationality, ethnic group, language, etc.: H 320

Subdivisions under pattern headings: H 1146 (2-3)

Subdivisions vs. phrase headings

[ . . . ] **and** [ . . . ] headings: H 310

Established phrase headings vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1095 (2)

Subfield coding

Events established as subdivisions: H 1592 (6)

Geographic subdivisions: H 830 (10)

Names of places used as topical subdivisions: H 830 (10)

Subheadings as "used for" references: H 373 (3)

"Subj Cat Manual/AACR2" notation in name authority records: H 405 (4)

Subject authority records: H 40

Changing existing records: H 193

Adding (*May Subd Geog*): H 194, H 250 (11)

Changing classification numbers: H 196

Changing references: H 195

Deleting subject authority records: H 193 (5-6), H 193.5

Characteristics of records in the file: H 40 (1)

Subject authority records (*Continued*)

Creating new authority records: H 200

Filling hierarchical "gaps": H 370 (5)

Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*

Biological names: H 1332 (5)

Geographic subdivision information in 781 fields: H 836

Historical background: H 40 (1)

Status of headings: H 40 (1-2)

Tagging headings: H 200 (4)

Subject dictionaries: H 1540 (2-4)

Subject heading assignment: H 180

*SEE ALSO* specific topics

Editions: H 175

Latest name of jurisdictions: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)

Order of headings: H 80

Subject authority records: H 40 (2)

Subject headings identical to descriptive access points: H 184

Subject heading construction: H 180 (7-8)

Music headings: H 250 (2-11), H 1438 (2), H 1916.3 (1), H 1917.5

Musical instruments: H 1918

Subject heading proposals: H 200

*SEE ALSO* "Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics

Abbreviations in subject headings: Appendix A, H 373 (2)

Acronyms as subject headings: H 373 (2)

Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 290

Authority research: H 202

Checklist: H 202 (9)

Broader terms and narrower terms: H 200 (6-7), H 370, H 375

Cataloger comments accompanying proposals: H 200 (10)

Categories of headings established as name or subject headings: H 405

Changing existing headings

Adding (*May Subd Geog*): H 193 (1), **H 194**

Changing classification numbers: H 196

Changing references: H 195

Deleting subject authority records: H 193 (5-6), H 193.5

Checklist for new subject heading proposals: H 200 (11)

Citing sources: H 200 (7-8, 17), **H 203**

*Subject Cataloging Manual* as a source: H 200 (9)

Classification numbers: **H 365**

Changing numbers associated with existing headings: H 196

Musical instruments: H 1918 (4)

New subject headings: H 200 (3, 15)



Subject heading proposals (*Continued*)

Diacritics and special characters in subject headings: Appendix C

"Gaps" in hierarchical reference structure: H 370 (5)

LC patterns

Criteria for citing: H 202 (1-2)

Procedure for citing in subject authority records: H 200 (9, 18)

Related terms: H 200 (6-7, 16), H 370 (10-12)

Scope notes: H 400

Subject authority records: H 200

"Used for" references: H 200 (5-6, 15), H 373

When to propose new subject headings H 187

Subject heading qualifiers

*SEE ALSO* Geographic qualifiers

Language qualifiers for subject headings

Art qualifiers: H 306 (3), H 1250 (2-6)

Ethnic qualifiers: H 306 (2), **H 351**

Not used with headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)

Language qualifiers: H 250 (4-5), H 306 (2)

Music headings: H 250 (3-5, 10-11), H 306 (3), H 1160 (1), H 1916.3 (3-5), H 1917 (1),  
H 1917.5, H 1918 (3)

Nationality qualifiers: H 306 (2), H 320, H 350

Not used with headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)

Parenthetical qualifiers: H 357

Music: H 250 (5, 10-11), H 1916.3 (3-5), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917.5

Musical instruments: H 1918 (2, 6-8)

Religious qualifiers: H 306 (2)

Time periods: H 306 (3)

Subject headings, Authority records for

*SEE* Subject authority records

Subject headings, Cancelling:

*SEE* Cancelling subject headings

Subject headings, Changing existing

*SEE* Changing existing subject headings

Subject headings, Specificity of: H 180 (2)

Subject usage information in name authority records: H 432, H 708, H 835

Geographic subdivision information: H 835

Name changes in political jurisdictions: H 708

Subscript characters: Appendix C (3)

[ . . . ] **Suburban Area**: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 3), H 1140 (6)

**Suburbs and environs** as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 790 (3)

Superscript characters: Appendix C (3)

Supplements: H 2145

Surveys: H 2149  
Synagogues  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (9)  
Systems of law: H 1718

- T -

**Tables** as a subdivision: H 2160  
Tagging subject headings  
    Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (5)  
    Subject authority records: H 200 (4)  
Taiwan: H 925 (2)  
    Wade-Giles romanization used for geographic names: H 690 (6)  
Tajikistan: H 1023 (2-4)  
**Tales:** H 1627 (5, 7)  
    SEE ALSO Fairy tales  
    As a folklore heading: H 1627 (1, 4)  
    Juvenile films: H 1690 (3)  
    Language qualifiers not used: H 1627 (1)  
Tape recordings, Catalogs of  
    SEE **Audiotape catalogs** as a subdivision  
Tape recordings, Video  
    SEE Video recordings  
**Teacher training** as a subdivision: H 2217 (2)  
Teachers  
    –**In-service training:** H 2217 (2)  
    –**Training of:** H 2217  
Teaching films, Foreign language: H 2230 (2)  
Technical atlases: H 1935 (3)  
Telephone calls  
    Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)  
**Telephone directories** as a subdivision: H 1558 (4)  
Television programs  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (9)  
Temples in ruins  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)  
Temples in use  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (9)  
Terminal buildings  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)  
**Terminology** as a subdivision: H 2184 (2)  
    –**Dictionaries** not used: H 2184 (1)

**Terms and phrases** as a subdivision: H 1540 (1), H 2184 (1)  
 –**Dictionaries** not used: H 2184 (1)

**Territorial questions** as a subdivision: H 1333.5 (2)

Territorial sovereignties  
     Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

**Territories and possessions** as a subdivision: H 2185  
     **SEE ALSO** Colonies of individual countries

Terrorist attacks  
     Not covered by pattern heading for wars: H 1200 (1)

**Testing** as a subdivision: H 2186

Textbooks: H 2187  
     **SEE ALSO** Juvenile textbooks  
     –**Study and teaching** not used: H 2110 (4)

Textbooks, Religious education  
     **SEE** Religious education textbooks

**Textbooks** as a subdivision: H 1690 (1), **H 2187**

**Textbooks for English, [French, etc.] speakers** as a subdivision: H 2187 (3)

**Textbooks for foreign speakers** as a subdivision: H 2187 (2)

**Texts** as a subdivision: H 2190  
     Music: H 1160 (8), H 1917 (1)

"The" in the initial position in subject headings: H 290, H 690 (6)

Theater buildings  
     Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Theater companies  
     Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

**Theater disaster, [date]** as a subdivision  
     Discontinued: H 1560 (2)

Theme parks  
     Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

**Themes, motives** as a subdivision: H 1627 (2)

**Theology** as a subdivision  
     Usage under **Bible**: H 1295 (2)

Theses: H 1570

Time period qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (3)

Time periods: H 620

Title added entries, Partial  
     **SEE** Partial title added entries

Titles of publications as subject headings: H 290, H 1435 (2-3)

Tombs  
     Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Topical subdivisions: H 1075 (1)  
     Literature about music: H 1160 (4)  
     Musical instruments: H 1161

Topical subject headings

Music: H 1160 (3), H 1916.3 (7-8)

Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Tornadoes

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Tournaments

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

**Tours** as a subdivision: H 1645 (3)

Towers

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Townships in the United States

Not used as geographic qualifiers: H 810 (5)

Trails

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Subject heading proposals: H 1925 (4)

Use of vernacular: H 690 (4), H 1925 (2)

**Training of** as a subdivision: H 2110 (2), **H 2217**

**Translating and interpreting:** H 2219 (1)

**Translating** as a subdivision: H 2219 (1)

Sacred works: H 1300 (1)

**Translating into [name of language]** as a subdivision: H 2219 (1)

**Translating services:** H 2219 (2)

Translations: H 2220

Classical and ancient works: H 1412

Folk literature: H 1627 (5)

Sacred works: H 1300

**Translations** as a subdivision: H 2220

**Translations into [name of language]** as a subdivision: H 2220

Folk literature: H 1627 (5)

Not used under headings for music of ethnic and national groups: H 1917 (4)

Sacred works: H 1300 (2)

Transliteration

Geographic subject headings: H 690 (6)

**Transportation:** H 2225

**Transportation** as a subdivision: H 2225 (2)

**Travel posters:** H 1945.5 (3)

Treaties: H 2227

Established as name headings: H 2227 (1)

**Treaties** as a subdivision: H 2227 (1)

Trials: H 2228

Formulating headings: H 2228 (4-5)

**Trials, litigation, etc.** as a subdivision: H 2228 (2-4)

Tribes (Ethnic groups)  
Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Tribes (Legal entities)  
Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Tribes, Indigenous (U.S.)  
As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)

Tripitaka: H 1300

Truck stops  
Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Tsunamis  
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

**Tuberculosis**  
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1150

Turkmenistan: H 1023 (2-4)

Tunnels: H 1334 (1)  
Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Typhoons  
Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

- U -

U.S.A.  
*SEE* United States

U.S.S.R.: H 1023 (1)

U.S. Newspaper Program: H 1920 (1)

U.S. states: H 713

U.S. Virgin Islands  
*SEE* Virgin Islands of the United States

UF references  
*SEE* "Used for" references

Ukraine: H 1023 (2-4)

**Unaccompanied** as a qualifier of music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (31, 34-35, 37-38)

Uncontrolled subject terms in the 653 field: H 160

Undertakers  
Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Uniform titles as subject headings  
Commentaries: H 1435 (2-3)  
Deleting articles in the initial position: H 290  
Established as name headings: H 1435 (3)  
-**History** not used: H 1647 (2)  
Tagging headings  
Subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Union catalogs: H 1361 (2)  
**Union lists** as a subdivision: H 1361 (2)  
**Union territories** as a subdivision: H 713  
United Kingdom  
    *SEE* Great Britain  
United States  
    Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)  
    Geographic subdivision: H 830 (5)  
        Not used under [ . . . ] **Americans**: H 1919.5 (3)  
        Not used under certain popular music headings: H 1916.5 (2)  
    Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1)  
        Abbreviations of states: H 810 (9-11)  
**United States–History–Civil War, 1861-1865**  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1200  
**United States. Air Force**  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159  
**United States. Armed Forces**  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159  
**United States. Army**  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159  
**United States. Congress**  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155  
**United States. Marine Corps**  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159  
**United States. Navy**  
    Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159  
United States Board on Geographic Names decisions  
    *SEE* BGN decisions  
United States states: H 713  
Universities and colleges  
    Established as name headings: H 405 (9)  
    Pattern heading for individual educational institutions: H 1151  
    Pattern heading for types of educational institutions: H 1151.5  
Uprisings  
    Formulating headings: H 1592  
    Pattern heading: H 1200  
**Urban transportation**: H 2225  
USA  
    *SEE* United States  
"Use" references  
    *SEE* "Used for references"

"Used for" references: H 373  
Changing references: H 195 (1)  
Contrasted with "general see" references: H 374 (1)  
Entering in subject authority records: H 200 (5-6, 15)  
Foreign language terms: H 373 (3)  
Geographic names: H 690 (7-8)  
Headings qualified by nationality, ethnic group, or language: H 320 (2), H 373 (4)  
Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (4)  
Music genre/form headings: H 250 (3-4, 6), H 1917.5 (10)  
Musical instruments: H 1918 (3)  
Subheadings: H 373 (3)  
Variant music subdivisions: H 1160 (1), H 1161 (1)

USNP  
*SEE* U.S. Newspaper program

USSR: H 1023 (1)

Utility districts  
Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Uzbekistan: H 1023 (2-4)

- V -

Valleys  
*SEE ALSO* River valleys  
Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)  
Formulating headings: H 800 (7)

Vatican City: H 1045  
Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7), H 1045

Vedas: H 1300

Vehicles, Land  
*SEE* Land vehicles

**Versions** as a subdivision: H 1300 (1-2)

Video recordings: H 2230

**Video catalogs** as a subdivision: H 1361 (3)

Villas  
Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Violin  
Free-floating subdivisions used under: H 1161

Virgin Islands of the United States  
Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)  
Geographic subdivision: H 807 (8)

Visual art  
*SEE* Art

Visual disabilities, People with  
    Visual materials for: H 1913 (2)  
Visual materials: H 2230  
Vital statistics: H 2095 (2)  
Vocal music headings  
    Accompaniment: H 1917.5 (36)  
    Chorus: H 1917.5 (32-35, 37-38)  
    Construction: H 1917.5 (28-37)  
    Governed by pattern headings: H 250 (8)  
    –**History and criticism:** H 2190 (2)  
    Solo voices: H 1917.5 (29-31)  
    –**Texts:** H 2190 (2)  
**Vocational guidance** as a subdivision: H 2232  
**Voivodeships** as a subdivision: H 713  
Volcanic eruptions  
    Formulating headings: H 1592 (5)

- W -

Wales  
    Geographic subdivision: H 955 (1)  
    Law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)  
Walls: H 1334 (1)  
    Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)  
War crime trials: H 2228 (4)  
Wars  
    Biography: H 1330 (4)  
    –**Casualties–Statistics:** H 2095 (2)  
    Drama: H 1780 (4)  
    Fiction: H 1790 (5)  
    Formulating headings: H 1592  
    Pattern heading: H 1200  
    –**Personal narratives:** H 1928 (1)  
    Poetry: H 1800 (4)  
    –**Public opinion:** H 1955 (5)  
    –**Territorial questions:** H 1333.5 (2)  
    –**Treaties:** H 2227 (1)  
Washington (D.C.)  
    Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7), H 1050  
    Metropolitan Area: H 362 (2), H 790 (1,3), H 1050  
    Region: H 790 (4)



Water districts  
     Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Watersheds  
     Formulating headings: H 800 (7-8), H 1145.5 (2)  
     [ . . . ] **Region**  
         Headings not constructed for regions based on watersheds: H 760 (1)

Waterways  
     Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Weeks, Special: H 1592

Wells  
     Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

West Bank: H 980

West Germany  
     *SEE* Germany

Wild and scenic rivers  
     Subject heading proposals: H 800 (6), **H 1925**

Wilderness areas: H 1925 (2)

Wildlife refuges  
     *SEE* Parks

Windows as building details: H 1334 (1, 8)

**with** in music form/genre headings: H 250 (8), H 1916.3 (3), H 1917.5 (21, 26-27)

Wives of famous men  
     Biography: H 1330 (4)

Women  
     *SEE ALSO* Wives of famous men  
     Biography: H 1330 (3)

Works of art, Individual  
     Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

**World politics:** H 1942 (1)

**World War, 1939-1945**  
     Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1200  
     –**Public opinion:** H 1955 (5)

World Wide Web  
     Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

- X -

"x" references  
     *SEE* "Used for" references

"xx" references  
     *SEE* Broader terms  
     Related terms

- Y -

**Yearbooks** as a subdivision

Discontinued as a general form subdivision: H 2400

Usage under –**Students**: H 2400

Years: H 620

Years, Special: H 1592

Yugoslavia: H 1055

- Z -

Zaibatsu

*SEE* Asian conglomerate corporations

Zoological gardens

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)